



KUBE+ Guides

Version: 2023.1.0 FP2

Copyright AppViewX, Inc.

Copyright © 2024 AppViewX, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

This document may not be copied, disclosed, transferred, or modified without the prior written consent of AppViewX, Inc. While all content is believed to be correct at the time of publication, it is provided as general-purpose information. The content is subject to change without notice and is provided “as is” and with no expressed or implied warranties whatsoever, including, but not limited to, a warranty for accuracy made by AppViewX. The software described in this document is provided under written license only, contains valuable trade secrets and proprietary information, and is protected by the copyright laws of the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use of software or its documentation can result in civil damages and criminal prosecution.

Trademarks

The trademarks, logos, and service marks displayed in this manual are the property of AppViewX or other third parties. Users are not permitted to use these marks without the prior written consent of AppViewX or such third party which may own the mark.

External Reference Links

This product includes software developed by the CentOS Project (www.centos.org).

This product includes software developed by Red Hat, Inc. (www.redhat.com).

This product includes software developed by VMware, Inc. (www.vmware.com).

All other trademarks mentioned in this document are the property of their respective owners.

Contact Information

AppViewX, Inc.

222 Broadway, FL 19

New York, NY 10038

Email: info@appviewx.com

Web: www.appviewx.com

Contents

Preface.....	6
Revision History.....	6
About this Guide	6
Audience.....	6
Text Conventions.....	6
Chapter 1. KUBE+ User Guide.....	7
KUBE+ Overview.....	7
Simplify and Modernize Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) in Kubernetes.....	7
3 Steps to Bridge the Gap between Agility and Security in Kubernetes.....	8
KUBE+ Features.....	8
KUBE+ Deployment Architecture.....	9
Overview.....	9
KUBE+.....	9
Cert Orchestrator.....	9
Communication Flow.....	10
Authentication and Access Control.....	11
Visibility & Control.....	13
Overview.....	13
Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster.....	13
Cluster Inventory.....	14
Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate.....	22
Visibility.....	24
Visibility - Overview.....	24
Server.....	25
Client.....	28
Trust Store.....	31
Dashboard - Insights.....	34

Dashboard - Overview.....	34
Viewing Dashboard Inventory.....	40
Aligning the Reports.....	40
Saving the Dashboard.....	40
Downloading the Dashboard Page.....	41
Scheduling and Emailing the Reports.....	41
Refreshing the Dashboard.....	41
Policy Enforcement.....	42
Policy Enforcement Overview.....	42
Certificate Authority (CA) Integration.....	122
Groups.....	205
Cluster Policy.....	208
Automate Certificate Lifecycle Management.....	211
Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management.....	211
Issuer CA.....	212
Secure Apps Inventory.....	215
Secure Service Mesh with mTLS authentication.....	224
Why Zero Trust is Critical?.....	224
AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh.....	224
Enabling AppViewX Signer.....	226
Mesh Inventory.....	228
Mesh Inventory Overview.....	229
Enable External Signing.....	233
Overview.....	233
Creating a Signer Profile.....	234
Integrating Istio with Custom CA.....	235
About Integrating Istio with Custom CA.....	235
Alerts and Logs.....	235
Alerts.....	236

Alert Expiry.....	242
Logs.....	248
System Administration.....	250
Crypto Minions.....	250
Configuring Cluster Settings.....	251
Configuring Email Settings.....	252
Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates.....	253
Auto Enrollment.....	254
Uninstall and Cleanup.....	277
Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment.....	277
FAQ and Troubleshooting.....	278
Command Line Cheat Sheet.....	278
FAQ.....	280
Chapter 2. KUBE+ Upgrade Guide.....	287
Introduction.....	287
Steps for Cert-Orchestrator Migration from v1.2 to v1.3.....	287

Preface

Revision History

Revision	Description	Date
1.3	Updated documents for Release 2023.1.0 FP2.1.	April 2024
1.2	Updated documents for Release 2023.1.0 FP2.	February 2024
1.1	Updated documents for Release 2023.1.0 FP1.	November 2023
1.0	Initial release of document for Release 2023.1.0.	September 2023

About this Guide

Welcome to the KUBE+ guide, introducing AppViewX KUBE+, a cutting-edge K8s Crypto Mesh designed for cloud and Kubernetes environments. This platform ensures top-notch security for containerized workloads by seamlessly handling TLS certificate issuance and management through automation. With KUBE+, administrators gain full control over the lifecycle of X.509 certificates within their Kubernetes cluster, empowering them with comprehensive certificate management capabilities.

Audience

The document is intended for internal users and customers of AppViewX.

Text Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Description
boldface	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
<code>codeblock</code>	Indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

Chapter 1: KUBE+ User Guide

- [KUBE+ Overview](#)
- [KUBE+ Features](#)
- [KUBE+ Deployment Architecture](#)
- [Visibility & Control](#)
- [Visibility](#)
- [Dashboard - Insights](#)
- [Policy Enforcement](#)
- [Automate Certificate Lifecycle Management](#)
- [Secure Service Mesh with mTLS authentication](#)
- [Mesh Inventory](#)
- [Enable External Signing](#)
- [Integrating Istio with Custom CA](#)
- [Alerts and Logs](#)
- [System Administration](#)
- [Uninstall and Cleanup](#)
- [FAQ and Troubleshooting](#)

KUBE+ Overview

Simplify and Modernize Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) in Kubernetes

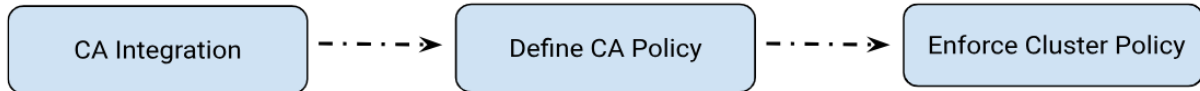
AppViewX KUBE+ is a comprehensive certificate lifecycle management solution for Kubernetes environments. It provides a central solution to discover, manage, automate, and govern certificates (or machine identities) across cloud-native containerized workloads and Kubernetes infrastructure. By bringing together visibility, automation, and policy-driven control, KUBE+ bakes security into the core of DevOps pipelines and Kubernetes management.

3 Steps to Bridge the Gap between Agility and Security in Kubernetes

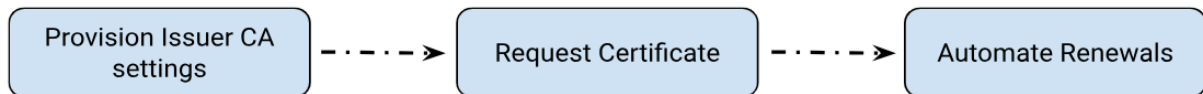
1. Get Visibility into all SSL/TLS certificates across your Kubernetes environments.



2. Enforce PKI policies to ensure the use of compliant CAs and strong crypto-standards.



3. Automate end-to-end Certificate Lifecycle Management.



KUBE+ Features

AppViewX KUBE+ offers comprehensive lifecycle management of x.509 digital certificates across K8s clusters and container workloads. It comes equipped with a variety of features, including the following:

- **Visibility & Control:** This platform provides a single solution for discovering, ensuring compliance, and maintaining control over TLS certificates across K8s and multi-cloud infrastructures.
- **Full TLS coverage on K8s:** Pod-Pod Communication (mTLS), Ingress Traffic, Ephemeral Pods, K8s Infra.
- **Enterprise PKI:** Automated certificate lifecycle management integrated with Public and Private CA (Issue, renew, and revoke).
- **High Availability & Resiliency:** Always available PKI with Offline CA issuance.
- **Business Continuity:** Simplify and streamline the Enterprise PKI certificate issuance process via Workflow Orchestration.
- **Ecosystem:** One single integrated platform (CA, Vault, TLS keystores, ITSM, K8s platform, & DevOps Tools).
- **Governance:** Audit & Control of certificates across Hybrid Cloud Infra.

KUBE+ Deployment Architecture

- [Overview](#)
- [KUBE+](#)
- [Cert Orchestrator](#)
- [Communication Flow](#)
- [Authentication and Access Control](#)

Overview

AppViewX KUBE+ consists of a control plane and a set of in-cluster components, designed on a microservice architecture and deployed as a container workload. The control plane is equipped with the ability to gain valuable insights into SSL/TLS certificates throughout K8s clusters and enforce PKI policies for these clusters. Meanwhile, the in-cluster components handle the automated lifecycle management of x.509 digital certificates for K8s clusters and container workloads.

- **KUBE+**: As a control plane feature, KUBE+ serves as a centralized hub, empowering users to effortlessly discover, manage, and automate certificate issuance via a robust policy-driven approach.
- **Cert-Orchestrator**: The primary component of KUBE+ which is deployed within a Kubernetes cluster and is responsible for managing the lifecycle of certificates.

KUBE+

AppViewX KUBE+ is a powerful control plane that offers centralized visibility and management for certificates across Kubernetes and container workloads through its integrated components. With KUBE+, you can maintain up-to-date certificate inventories, track certificate chain of trust, locations, expiration dates, and crypto standards.

The platform enables you to establish and enforce enterprise-wide PKI policies and role-based access controls, providing enhanced security. KUBE+ also facilitates easy audits and compliance validation with comprehensive reporting and logging functionalities.

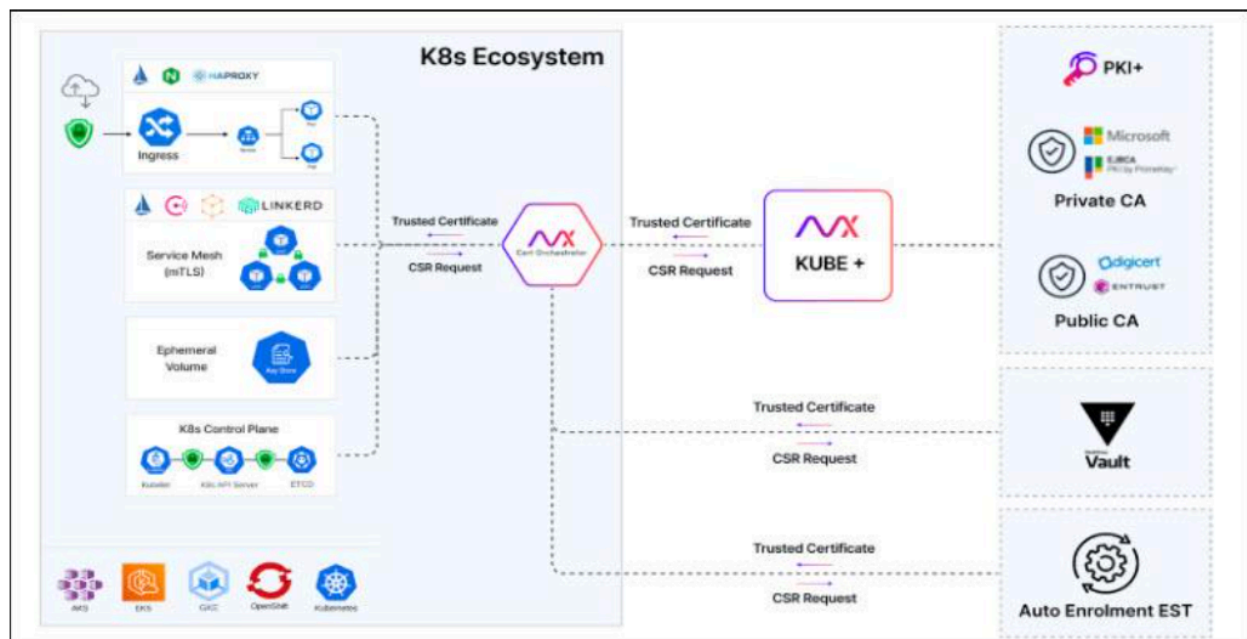
Moreover, the seamless integration with both public trust and private trust Certificate Authorities (CAs) simplifies the management of the entire certificate lifecycle, ensuring a smooth and efficient process.

Cert Orchestrator

Cert-Orchestrator is a Kubernetes cryptomesh that utilizes a microservice architecture and is deployed as a container workload. Its purpose is to facilitate the implementation of KUBE+ across workloads and hosted clusters.

Users have the option to deploy and integrate the cert orchestrator with AppViewX KUBE+. This enables the full range of Crypto Mesh features, or specific features can be selectively implemented depending on the use case. The cert-orchestrator comprises several sub-components that enable the KUBE+ solution:

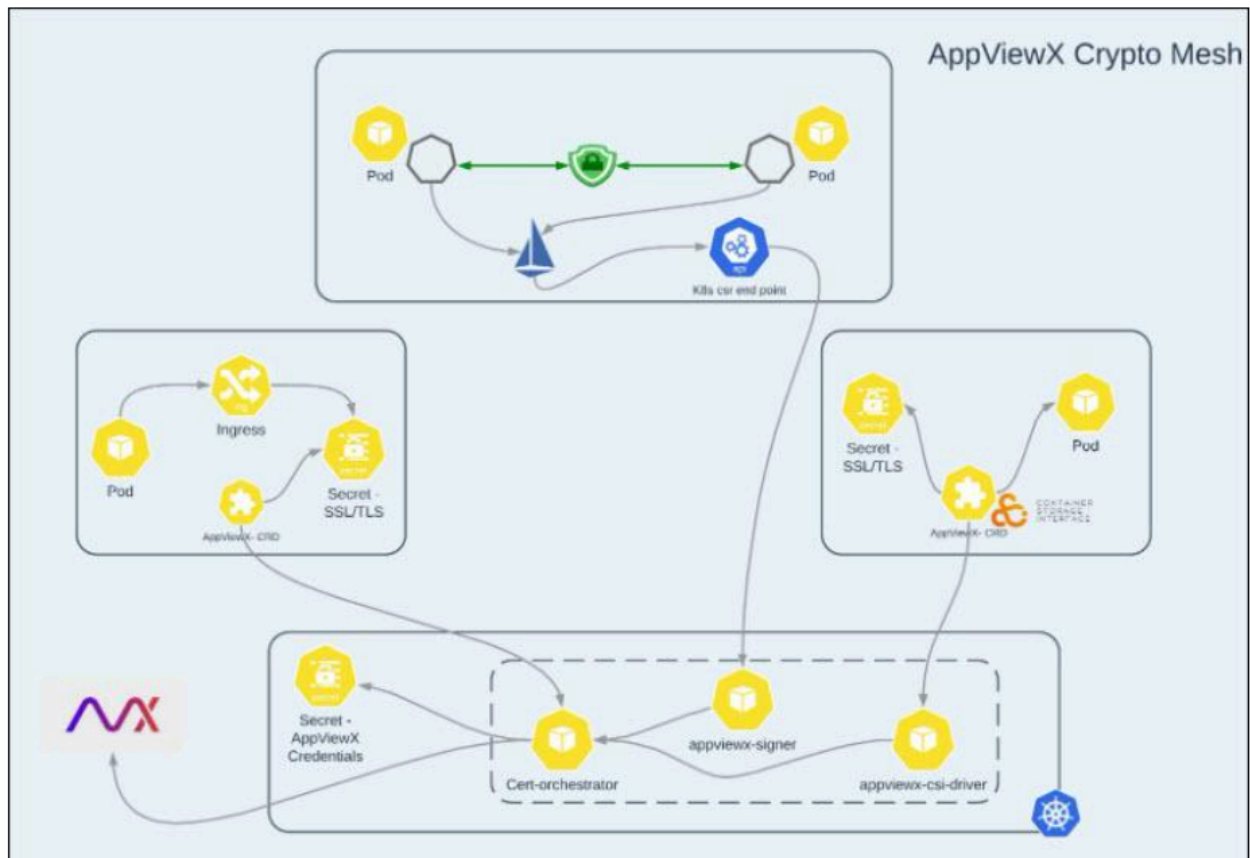
- **Cert-orchestrator controller:** The primary component of KUBE+ is deployed to enable end-to-end certificate lifecycle management, including discovery, enrollment, and renewal.
- **AppViewX-Signer:** The KUBE+ component is deployed together with Cert-orchestrator to manage certificates within Istio Service Mesh.
- **AppViewX-CSI:** The KUBE+ component is deployed along with Cert-orchestrator to manage certificates within ephemeral volumes of pods.
- **AppViewX-Infra-orchestrator:** The KUBE+ component, deployed as a daemon set along with Cert-orchestrator, enables certificate lifecycle management for the Kubernetes infrastructure or control plane, including certificate discovery and enrollment from external public or private CAs.



Communication Flow

Cert-orchestrator and AppViewX KUBE+ primarily communicate through REST API-based communication to facilitate end-to-end certificate lifecycle management operations.

The communication between the subcomponents of the cert-orchestrator and AppViewX KUBE+ for their respective business logic is enabled and routed through the cert-orchestrator controller. The cert-orchestrator serves as the control plane for the end-to-end certificate lifecycle management operations, which means that any outgoing communication from the Kubernetes cluster to AppViewX KUBE+ is only routed through the primary controller.



Authentication and Access Control

The communication between the K8s cluster and AppViewX KUBE+ takes place through a REST API, and it is authenticated. AppViewX provides several authentication modes to access its API.

Authentication

- **Basic Authentication:** AppViewX offers multiple modes of authentication for accessing its API. Users can create a dedicated user for authentication, either an external user (LDAP, RADIUS and TACACS) or an internal user created in AppViewX. For more information on Basic Authentication, refer to [Platform User guide](#).
- **OAuth 2.0 (Service Account):** Users have the option to create a service account that is enabled through AppViewX OAuth 2.0. They can then obtain the client ID and client secret from the service account, which can be used for authentication purposes. For more information on OAuth 2.0, refer to [Platform User guide](#).

Access Control

Each role assigns a specific set of permissions relating to the modules that can be accessed and the tasks that can be performed in each AppViewX module. The roles can be assigned only to a user group. The user groups that are assigned with a role will automatically inherit all the associated permissions. User groups can be assigned with more than a role.

The Roles management of Inventory comprises some of the Out of the Box (OOB) roles available for KUBE+ features via cert-orchestrator. The OOB roles can be cloned, enabled, and disabled. It can not be updated or deleted. Administrators can also create custom roles. Custom roles can be updated, deleted, enabled, and disabled. Users can either use OOB roles (if they match their needs) or custom roles to map to user groups. KUBE+ is enabled with a list of Out Of the Box roles to ease the process of defining access and role permissions for different personas accessing KUBE+.

KUBE-Application-User: For DevOps/Application users/CloudOps teams to perform Certificate Lifecycle Management for their applications (or) business units.

KUBE-PKI-Administrator: For Infosec and PKI teams to define and enforce PKI policies for their Kubernetes environments.

KUBE-cert-orchestrator: Role to be mapped to the service account or user used for deployment of Cert-Orchestrator for performing CLM operations on individual Kubernetes clusters.

As previously explained, when deploying Cert-Orchestrator within the Kubernetes cluster for access control, it's necessary to follow these steps:

1. Create a user or service account and associate it with the User Group.
2. Assign the KUBE-cert-orchestrator role to the User Group.
3. Additionally, ensure that the super access resource is linked to the User Group.
4. Ensure MFA (Multi Factor Authentication) is disabled for this user since it is used for API access.

For detailed instructions to perform any actions on role, see [Platform User Guide](#).

Visibility & Control

- [Overview](#)
- [Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster](#)
- [Cluster Inventory](#)
- [Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate](#)

Overview

To eliminate outages and ensure security, Infosec and PKI teams need to prevent security blindspots by getting complete visibility into all certificates across Kubernetes environments.

To achieve visibility into all certificates using KUBE+, the DevOps/CloudOps teams must adhere to the following process.

1. **Onboard Cluster** - Deploy AppViewX KUBE+ component in the desired cluster.
2. **Manage Cluster** - Deploy cert-orchestrator with the feature gate to discover certificates and manage the cluster in the inventory.
3. **Visibility & Insights** - The certificates discovered from these managed clusters can be visualized in the inventory and dashboards for assessing the security risks.

Prerequisites to Onboard a Cluster

The cert-orchestrator is deployed as a container workload on the same Kubernetes infrastructure where the workloads requiring certificates are running.

To begin the deployment process, the following prerequisites must be met and verified:

- Cluster Running Kubernetes version 1.22 and above; OpenShift version 4.10, 4.11 or 4.12.
- Docker version 20.x installed and running as the container runtime.
- Containerd running if the cluster does not support docker runtime.
- Access to AppViewX KUBE+ instance deployed on-prem or an AppViewX SaaS instance subscribed.
- Helm and kubectl packages installed in the Kubernetes cluster.

- In the case of a bastion host, the bastion host should be connected to the cluster.
- Access to the helm and docker image repositories hosted at AppViewX.





Note: Contact AppViewX support to obtain the authentication credentials for the Docker and Helm repository.

Cluster Inventory

To deploy the cert-orchestrator in the Kubernetes cluster the deployment configuration for the cluster should be obtained from AppViewX by onboarding the cluster in the Cluster Inventory and the cluster to be set in Managed status.

Cluster Inventory displays the list of clusters within a cert-orchestrator. On the Cluster Inventory page, you can:

- refresh the list, click the  (**refresh**) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (**navigation**) icon.

The cluster inventory list includes the following information:

Column and Description Table

Column Name	Description
Cluster Name	Name of the Kubernetes cluster and metadata about the cluster retrieved on clicking the name of the cluster.
Vendor	The Kubernetes Cluster Provider.
No. of Nodes	Count of nodes in the cluster.
State	State of the Cluster for CLM operations. Possible Options: Managed (CLM operations can be performed) and Unmanaged (CLM operations cannot be performed).
Status	Health of the cert-orchestrator in the cluster.

Column and Description Table (continued)

Column Name	Description
Created By	The user who generated the deployment configuration.
Last Updated	Timestamp of the most recent health check update.
Actions	Actions icon allows updating the deployment configuration for the Cluster.

- [Onboarding a Cluster](#)
- [Managing a Cluster](#)
- [Unmanaging a Cluster](#)
- [Modifying Feature Gates of a Cluster](#)
- [Deleting a Cluster](#)

Onboarding a Cluster

Connect Cluster enables you to obtain the deployment configuration of the cluster for deploying and managing the cert-orchestrator from AppViewX KUBE+.

Generating a deployment configuration for the cluster involves initiating the generation of deployment templates or configuration steps. KUBE+ enables DevOps teams or cluster administrators to generate deployment configurations for their clusters using various methods.

- **Easy onboarding:** - Enables DevOps team to generate a common deployment template for onboarding multiple clusters.
- **Advanced onboarding** - Enables individual cluster administrators to generate cluster specific deployment configuration.
- [Onboarding a Cluster - Easy Method](#)
- [Onboarding a Cluster - Advanced](#)

Onboarding a Cluster - Easy Method

Deploy and manage cert-orchestrator on multiple Kubernetes clusters using a common deployment configuration.

The common deployment template enables the DevOps team to generate a generic command that can be executed at multiple clusters where these commands just need Cluster Name and Vendor name to be changed accordingly while executed in the respective clusters.

A common credential will be generated with a default user group associated to the OOB role and resource which is downloadable as a YAML and the object type is a Kubernetes secret. The credential can be changed by editing the cluster once it's successfully managed in the inventory.

Additionally, the common deployment configuration enables default services, including discovery of certificates and provisioning of certificates from the Kubernetes cluster. Administrator can modify the services after managing the cluster in the cluster inventory.

To obtain the common deployment template for Kubernetes cluster:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Click **Connect Cluster** on the menu bar.
3. Select **Get Started** under **Easy Onboarding**.
4. On the **Cluster Advanced Onboard** page, enter values in the form fields to generate the deployment/installation command. Details on the mapping of each field are provided in the table below:



Generating Helm Command - Fields and Description Table

Field	Description
Cluster Details	
Enter Cluster Name*	Enter a unique cluster name in the format of FQDN. Example: my-cluster.net.
Vendor*	Select the K8s vendor where the cert-orchestrator is deployed from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EKS • AKS • GKE • OpenShift • Self-Managed
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Click **Generate Installation Command** to get the Helm command in the Commands field.



Note:

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the  (**Expand**) icon.
- To copy the command, click  (**Copy**) icon.

6. Click **Download credentials** to download the credentials of your AppViewX environment. Once deployed in the cluster, this credentials enables connectivity between the Kubernetes cluster and AppViewX environment from the cert-orchestrator deployed in the Kubernetes cluster.



Note:

- The downloaded credential creates a default OAuth svc account in AppViewX named **kube-svc-account** with a client ID and client secret.
- The **kube-svc-account** is linked to a default user group named **kube-svc-usergroup**, which, in turn, is associated with the OOB **kube-cert-orchestrator** role and super access resource.
- The downloaded credential includes the connectivity URL, serving as the AppViewX login URL.
- After successfully onboarding and managing the cluster in the cluster inventory, the user or admin with access to the inventory can edit the cluster. This allows for modifications to the service account and connectivity URL as needed.

Onboarding a Cluster - Advanced

Deploy and manage cert-orchestrator on Kubernetes clusters by customizing installation commands and choosing specific services.

The advanced onboarding enables the DevOps team/cluster administrators to generate a specific install command that can be executed at the clusters, administrators or DevOps team can modify the namespace, connectivity URL and KUBE+ services to be deployed in the cluster.


To obtain cert-orchestrator deployment configuration for the respective Kubernetes cluster:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Click **Connect Cluster** on the menu bar.

3. Select **Get Started** under **Advanced Onboarding**.
4. On the **Cluster Easy Onboard** page, enter values in the form fields to generate the deployment/ installation command. Details on the mapping of each field are provided in the table below:



Generating Helm Command - Fields and Description Table

Field	Description
Cluster and Connectivity Details	
Enter Cluster Name*	Enter a unique cluster name in the format of FQDN. Example: my-cluster.net.
Vendor*	Select the K8s vendor where the cert-orchestrator is deployed from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EKS • AKS • GKE • OpenShift • Self-Managed
Connect To*	Select one of the following options to establish a connection between the cert-orchestrator and AppViewX across different AppViewX deployment scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AppViewX URL - For on-prem deployment, select this option. • Cloud Connector URL - For cloud SaaS deployment, select this option.
URL*	Enter the URL based on the Connect To type (onprem/cloud connector).
Credential Type*	Select one of the following credential types for integrating the cert-orchestrator with AppViewX: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic Authentication • OAuth2.0

Field	Description
Username*	<p>This option is applicable for the Basic Authentication of the Credential Type and will auto populate the list of users from the user inventory. Select the required user to be used for authentication.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: In this mode, only users created within the AppViewX database or on boarded via AAA (LDAP, RADIUS, TACACS) are supported. SSO credentials cannot be used for API authentication. It is recommended to use OAuth 2.0 for authentication instead. </div>
Crypto Mesh Details	
Namespace*	Enter the Namespace where the cert-orchestrator is to be deployed. It is recommended to install in the crypto-mesh namespace.
Features*	Select the list of feature gates to be enabled/disabled in the cert-orchestrator deployment configuration for the cluster.
Certification Group*	<p>Select the certificate group to onboard certificates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto Create Group - This option enables Auto creation of Certificate Groups in AppViewX with the Group Name as the Namespace Name. • Use Existing - This option allows you to choose the existing certificate group. If you choose this option, select a group from the Select Group dropdown menu. .
Enable Private Key Discovery*	Set the value to “True”, if you want to discover the private keys from the Kubernetes secrets.

5. Click **Generate Installation Command** to get the Helm command in the Commands field.

**Note:**

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the  (**Expand**) icon.
- To copy the command, click  (**Copy**) icon.

6. Click **Finish**.

Execute the copied installation commands sequentially on your Kubernetes cluster where the cert-orchestrator is to be deployed.



Note: Upon clicking **Finish**, the deployment generated for the cluster will not appear in the cluster inventory until the cert-orchestrator is successfully deployed within the cluster.

To verify if the cert-orchestrator is deployed and functioning as expected, execute the following command:

```
kubectrl get pods --all -n crypto-mesh
```



Note: The initial status of the cert-orchestrator pod will be in 1/2 running state and the state will be changed to 2/2 upon approval/moving the cluster to managed state in the Cluster inventory.

- Expected status is for the pods to be in running status with 1/2 state.
- In case of any issues or logs to be collected or verified, execute **kubectrl logs -f <cert-orchestrator-podname> -n crypto-mesh**.
- Ensure to review the deployment prerequisites for ephemeral volume if the Ephemeral Volume use case is selected.

Managing a Cluster

CLM operations on the Kubernetes cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed will be enabled only when the cluster is in **Managed State**.

Upon successful installation of cert-orchestrator in the desired cluster, the cluster information will be automatically populated in the Cluster Inventory in a **Pending Approval** status.

To change the cluster status to Managed:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select a preferred cluster(s), and then click **Manage**.



Note: To enable the automatic transition of clusters into a managed state, administrators can set the 'Cluster Auto Approval Policy' to **True** by navigating to **menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Cluster Settings**.

It takes a while to update the status of the cluster to Managed.

Unmanaging a Cluster

You can restrict additional CLM operations on a designated cluster that is already in a Managed State within the Cluster Inventory by unmanaging the cluster.

To unmanage a cluster:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select a managed cluster.
3. Click **Unmanage** on the menu bar.

It takes a while to update the status of the cluster to Unmanaged.

Modifying Feature Gates of a Cluster

The feature gates configured while generating the deployment configuration can be modified post successful deployment of cert-orchestrator in the desired cluster.

To modify feature gates for a cluster, by simply clicking on the edit icon parallel to the cluster name.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Click the  icon on a cluster in the **Actions** column.
3. On the **Update Cert Orchestrator** page, cluster administrators can modify the feature gates, AppViewX URL, Enable/Disable Private Key Discovery, Modify the service account associated to the cluster.
4. If there are changes in the AppViewX URL or the service account (credential) associated with the cluster, the cluster administrator can download the credential as a YAML file and deploy it in the respective cluster.
5. Click **Generate Update Command** to get the updated deployment configuration.
6. Copy and execute the install command in the desired cluster.



Note: To go to the previous page, click on **Cluster Inventory** in the breadcrumb trail.

7. Click **Finish** to update the modified changes (or) click **Reset** to restore the previous configuration changes associated to the cluster.

Deleting a Cluster

You can delete clusters from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated cluster.

To delete a cluster:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Cluster Inventory**.
2. Select the designated cluster, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



Note:

- A cluster can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting clusters from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the cluster to complete the removal process.

Deployment Prerequisites for Ephemeral Volume Feature Gate

Enabling the feature gate "Provision Certificates to Ephemeral Volumes" for certificate provisioning into pod volumes will require the activation of a CSI driver feature within the cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed.

To enable the CSI provider:

1. Add the CSI provider helm repository to the Kubernetes cluster by using the command: `helm repo add secrets-store-csi-driver https://kubernetes-sigs.github.io/secrets-store-csi-driver/charts`.
2. Install the CSI provider drive in the Kubernetes cluster by using the command `helm install csi secrets-store-csi-driver/secrets-store-csi-driver --namespace crypto-mesh --set syncSecret.enabled=true --set enableSecretRotation=true --set rotationPollInterval=5m`.

**Note:**

- The value of `RotationPollInterval` can be configured to set the time interval at which the CSI driver makes a call to `appviewx-csi-provider` for synchronizing the certificate content from secret to pod volume.
- If the CSI provider driver already existed prior to the installation of the crypto mesh, you can skip this step.
- For CSI feature, in case of any issues or logs to be collected or verified execute **`kubectl logs -f <appviewx-csi-provider-podname> -n crypto-mesh`**.

- [OpenShift Security Permissions](#)

OpenShift Security Permissions

For deploying the AppViewX CSI feature in OpenShift environments, the following elevated privileges are required. To execute the prerequisites, Contact OpenShift Administrator.

1. After deploying the `appviewx-csi-provider` in an OpenShift cluster, patch the DaemonSet for the AppViewX CSI Provider to run with a privileged security context. `kubectl patch daemonset appviewx-csi-provider --type=json -p '{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/template/spec/containers/0/securityContext", "value": {"privileged": true}}'`.
2. Add the security account for the Secret Store CSI Driver and AppViewX CSI Provider to the privileged security context constraint. To obtain the name of the service account associated with the AppViewX CSI provider, run the command `oc get sa -n crypto-mesh`, and copy the relevant name to be used in the command below: `oc adm policy add-scc-to-user privileged system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:secrets-store-csi-driver oc adm policy add-scc-to-user privileged system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:<replace with service account name>`.
3. Give additional access to the application for retrieving secrets with the AppViewX CSI Provider. Create a **SecurityContextConstraint** to **allowHostDirVolumePlugin** and **allowHostPorts** for the service account of the application.

```
cat > application-scc.yaml << EOF
apiVersion: security.openshift.io/v1
kind: SecurityContextConstraints
```

```
metadata:  
  name: appviewx-csi-provider  
  allowPrivilegedContainer: false  
  allowHostDirVolumePlugin: true  
  allowHostNetwork: true  
  allowHostPorts: true  
  allowHostIPC: false  
  allowHostPID: false  
  readOnlyRootFilesystem: false  
  defaultAddCapabilities:  
    - SYS_ADMIN  
  runAsUser:  
    type: RunAsAny  
  seLinuxContext:  
    type: RunAsAny  
  fsGroup:  
    type: RunAsAny  
  users:  
    - system:serviceaccount:crypto-mesh:<replace with service account name>  
EOF  
Kubectl apply -f application-scc.yaml
```

Visibility

- [Visibility - Overview](#)
- [Server](#)
- [Client](#)
- [Trust Store](#)

Visibility - Overview

After successfully installing cert-orchestrator on the desired cluster and enabling the feature gate for certificate discovery, it will automatically detect certificates within the Kubernetes environment and create an inventory, allowing you to proactively manage all certificates from a unified dashboard.

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes are further classified into:

1. **Ingress** - Certificates which are used by Ingress controllers.
2. **Infrastructure certificates** - Certificate discovered from Kubernetes control plane components.
3. **Service Mesh** - Certificates which are enrolled from AppViewX for Service Mesh for mTLS authentications.
4. **Others** - Certificates which are not of any of the above 3 classifications will be classified as Others.


Server

Server certificate inventory is where all the server certificates with the EKU (Extended/enhanced Key Usage) Server authentication will be present.

In this release, renewals and regenerations of the server certificates are only supported through the Cert-Orchestrator, which is part of the in-cluster component of KUBE+.

The following table describes the options available on the Server Certificate inventory page:



Options available on the Server Certificate page

Options	Description
	Allows to switch between the view by clicking the toggle button.
Groups	Expanding this dropdown displays the certificate groups and the number of certificates in each group. Selecting a group will display the filtered list of certificates.
Filter Summary	Displays the status of certificates according to expiry, compliance, validity, and so on.
Advanced Search	<p>Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the Advanced Search window.</p> <p>To find the preferred server certificate, perform any of the following:</p>

Options available on the Server Certificate page (continued)

Options	Description
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose the CAs from the Certificate Authority dropdown menu. 2. Enter the desired search terms in the Common Name, Serial Number, or Issuer Common Name field. 3. Select a certificate attribute from the dropdown list and if required add more certificate attributes to the search criteria by clicking the Add Certificate Attribute. 4. Click Search. <p>The matching server certificates are displayed on the Server Certificate page.</p>
Actions	<p>Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Export Certificates • Download Certificates • Delete • Change Status • Assign Group • Unassign Group • Add/Modify Comments • Certificate Attributes • Renew Certificate • Revoke Certificate • CA Switch • Revocation Check
Columns	<p>Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Server Certificate inventory page.</p>

Options available on the Server Certificate page (continued)

Options	Description
Number of Rows per Page	Hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.
	Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.
	Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data.

The Server Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

Column and Description Table

Column Name	Description
Common Name	The common name of the certificate.
Discovery Source	The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates
Serial Number	A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process.
Group	The certificate group name.
Issuer Common Name	Issuer name of the certificate.
Valid To (GMT)	The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Status	The status of the certificate.
Certificate Authority	Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).
Kube Attributes	Attributes configured in CA.

Ingress Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and secrets associated with Kubernetes ingresses are classified as Ingress certificates.

Infrastructure Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes control plane components via feature gate “**Discover K8’s Infra Certificates**” are classified as Infrastructure certificates.

ServiceMesh

KUBE+ provides the feature gate to secure pod-pod communication in a Kubernetes service mesh infrastructure with mTLS certificates signed by Enterprise PKI. If the feature gate “**Enable mTLS certificates for Service Mesh**” is enabled the mTLS certificates signed by AppViewX will be classified as Service Mesh certificates.

Others

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and not associated with any ingress (or) which does not classify into any of the above categories will be classified as Other certificates.


Client

Client certificate inventory is where all the client certificates with the EKU (Extended/enhanced Key Usage) Client authentication will be present.

In this release, renewals and regenerations of the client certificates are only supported through the Cert-Orchestrator, which is part of the in-cluster component of KUBE+.

The following table describes the options available on the server certificate inventory page:



Options available on the Client Certificate page

Options	Description
	Allows to switch between the view by clicking the toggle button.
Groups	Expanding this dropdown displays the certificate groups and the number of certificates in each group. Selecting a group will display the filtered list of certificates.
Filter Summary	Displays the status of certificates according to expiry, compliance, validity, and so on.

Options available on the Client Certificate page (continued)

Options	Description
Advanced Search	<p>Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the Advanced Search window.</p> <p>To find the preferred server certificate, perform any of the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Choose the CAs from the Certificate Authority dropdown menu. 2. Enter the desired search terms in the Common Name, Serial Number, or Issuer Common Name field. 3. Select a certificate attribute from the dropdown list and if required add more certificate attributes to the search criteria by clicking the Add Certificate Attribute. 4. Click Search. <p>The matching server certificates are displayed on the Server Certificate page.</p>
Actions	<p>Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Export Certificates • Download Certificates • Delete • Change Status • Assign Group • Unassign Group • Add/Modify Comments • Certificate Attributes • Renew Certificate

Options available on the Client Certificate page (continued)

Options	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Revoke Certificate • CA Switch • Revocation Check
Columns	Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Server Certificate inventory page.
Number of Rows per Page	Hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.
	Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.
	Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data.

The Client Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

Column and Description Table

Column Name	Description
Common Name	The common name of the certificate.
Discovery Source	The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates
Serial Number	A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process.
Group	The certificate group name.
Issuer Common Name	Issuer name of the certificate.
Valid To (GMT)	The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Status	The status of the certificate.

Column and Description Table (continued)

Column Name	Description
Certificate Authority	Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).
Kube Attributes	Attributes configured in CA.

Ingress Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and secrets associated with kubernetes ingresses are classified as Ingress certificates.

Infrastructure Certificates

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes control plane components via feature gate “**Discover K8’s Infra Certificates**” are classified as Infrastructure certificates.

ServiceMesh

KUBE+ provides the feature gate to secure pod-pod communication in a Kubernetes service mesh infrastructure with mTLS certificates signed by Enterprise PKI. If the feature gate “**Enable mTLS certificates for Service Mesh**” is enabled the mTLS certificates signed by AppViewX will be classified as Service Mesh certificates.

Others

Certificates discovered from Kubernetes secrets and not associated with any ingresses (or) which does not classify into any of the above categories will be classified as Other certificates.

Trust Store



The Trust Store certificate inventory consists of the following:

- Intermediate
- Root

Options available on the Intermediate and Root Certificate page

Options	Description
Advanced Search	Allows you to perform a quick search for specific data. Clicking on the search bar dropdown opens the Advanced Search window.

Options available on the Intermediate and Root Certificate page (continued)

Options	Description
All	Allows you to filter the certificates by their Certificate Authority (CA).
Actions	Displays the list of actions you can perform on the certificates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Export Certificates • Copy • Download • Delete • Chain of Trust Preference • Certificate Attributes
Columns	Allows you to select the columns to be displayed on the Client Certificate inventory page.
Number of Rows per Page	hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">1 to 16 of 16</p> <p>Show:</p> <p style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 2px;">25 records</p> <p>50 records</p> <p>75 records</p> <p>100 records</p> </div>
	Allows to switch between the certificate inventory pages.
	Allows to refresh the certificate inventory data.

The Trust Store certificate inventory list includes the following information:

Column and Description Table

Column Name	Description
Common Name	The common name of the certificate.
Certificate Authority	Name of the Certificate Authority (CA).
Serial Number	A unique identifier assigned to the certificate by the CA during the issuance process.
Valid From (GMT)	The start date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Valid To (GMT)	The expiration date and time of a certificate, expressed in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).
Issuer Organization	The name of the issuer organization of the certificate that acts as the CA.
Issuer Organization Unit	The name of the issuer organization unit of the certificate that acts as the CA.
Key Algorithm & Size	<p>The key type of the certificate such as:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. RSA 2. ECDSA <p>and sizes such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2048/4096/3072 bit length for RSA. 256 / 384 / 521 bit length for ECDSA.
Signature	The private key of the certificate issuer.
Discovery Source	The source from which a certificate management system discovers and retrieves information about certificates.
Discovered File Name(s)	The name of the file discovered during a discovery process.
Application(s)	The applications that use the certificates.

Column and Description Table (continued)

Column Name	Description
Associated Object(s)	The objects that are linked to a particular certificate.

Intermediate

Intermediate certificate inventory is where the issuer certificates apart from the root certificate will be displayed. In the chain of trust, if there is more than one layer of the intermediate certificate (excluding root and end certificate), all those certificates will be shown in this inventory.

Root

Root certificate inventory is where the root certificate of all the issuer certificates will be maintained. For any chain of trust certificates, there can be only one root certificate.

Dashboard - Insights



- [Dashboard - Overview](#)
- [Viewing Dashboard Inventory](#)
- [Aligning the Reports](#)
- [Saving the Dashboard](#)
- [Downloading the Dashboard Page](#)
- [Scheduling and Emailing the Reports](#)
- [Refreshing the Dashboard](#)

Dashboard - Overview

AppViewX KUBE+ has a few in-built reports that are available under the dashboard. These reports can be used to categorize certificates based on specific parameters.

The reports can be used to enforce the DevOps/CloudOps team to follow standard PKI practices across your Kubernetes clusters.

On the Dashboard page,

- you can manually refresh the each report by clicking the  (**Refresh**) icon
- Using the  (**Options**) icon and select any of the following options:

- **Collapse/Expand** - This option allows you to collapse or expand the report.
- **Minimize** - This option allows you to minimize the report.
- **Download as PDF** - This option allows you to download the report as .pdf to your system.
- **Export as Excel** - This option allows you to export the report data as Excel to your system.

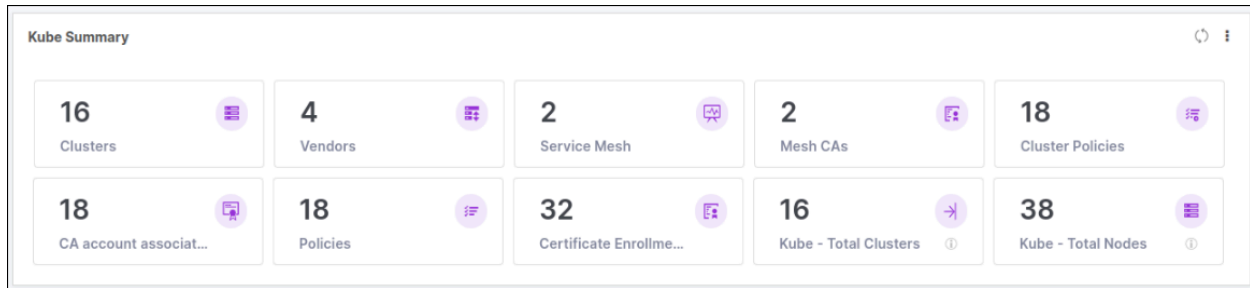
The reports displayed on the dashboard are:

- [KUBE Summary](#)
- [Cluster Certificate Authority](#)
- [Clusters by Vendors](#)
- [Certificates by Namespaces](#)
- [Top 20 Clusters with Most Certificates](#)
- [Top Clusters with Expired Certificates](#)
- [Namespaces with Expired Certificates](#)
- [Certificate Expiry by Quarter](#)
- [Mesh Certificate Authority](#)

KUBE Summary

The KUBE Summary dashboard provides insights around the usage and adoption of the KUBE+ product covering the below aspects.

- Number of clusters onboarded in KUBE+.
- Vendor summary to distinct the Kubernetes vendors in your organization.
- Service Mesh summary for usage and adoption of mTLS certificates from KUBE+ across service mesh infrastructure.
- Cluster Policy summary to view the adoption of varied Certificate Authorities across your clusters.
- CA Account summary to view the adoption of Issuer CA mapped to specific cluster policies.
- Certificate Enrollment summary to view number of certificate enrollments happened via KUBE+.
- License summary to identify the adoption and usage of KUBE+ based on cluster or number of Kubernetes nodes.

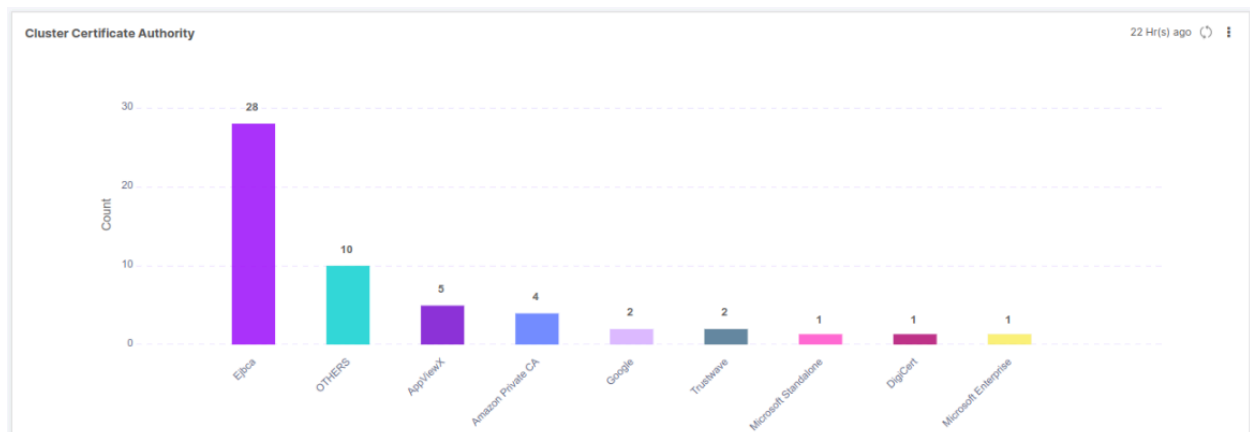


Cluster Certificate Authority

The Cluster Certificate Authority dashboard provides insights around varied Certificate Authorities which are used for signing certificates which are deployed in Kubernetes clusters.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand the wide range of Certificate Authorities starting from Self Signed CA's to Internal and External CA's used by DevOps / CloudOps team for signing their workload certificates.

The reports can be further refined by filtering through the Certificate Authorities, allowing for more specific insights into the clusters, namespaces, and secrets that host certificates signed by a particular CA, facilitating targeted actions accordingly.

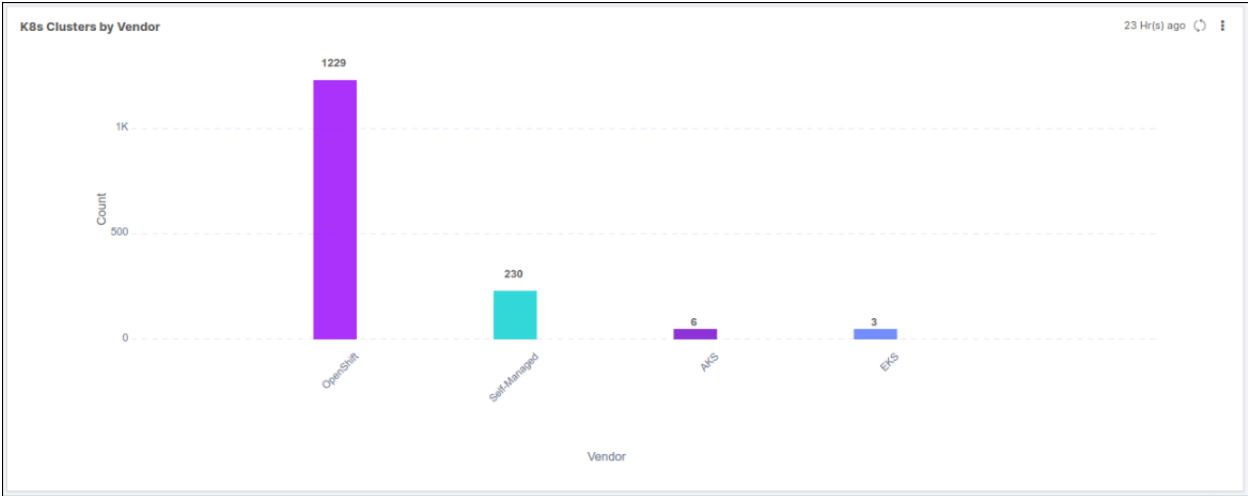


Clusters by Vendors

The Clusters by Vendors dashboard provides insights around classification of clusters and their certificates managed in KUBE+ if in case your Kubernetes environments are spread across multiple Cloud Service Providers or Hybrid Cloud infrastructures.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand the wide range of certificates provisioned at a specific vendor ecosystem. The reports can be further refined by filtering through

the Kubernetes Vendor, allowing for insights into cluster name, namespace and secrets that host the certificates.

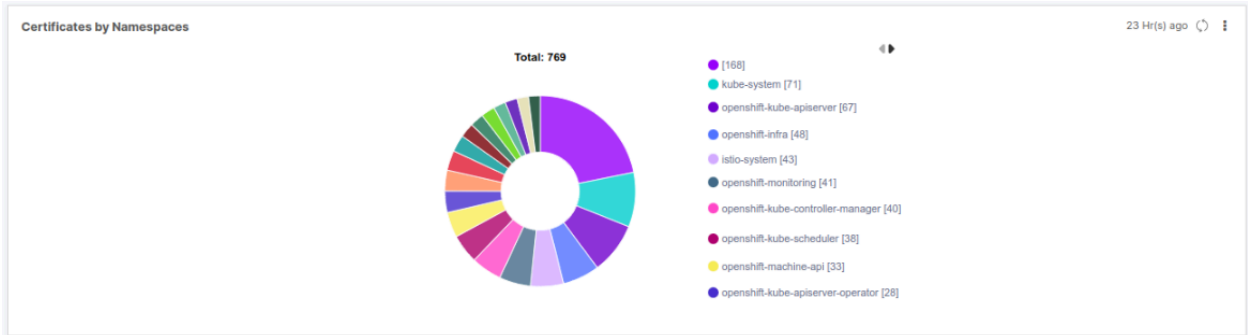


Certificates by Namespaces

The Certificates by Namespaces dashboard provides insights around classification of certificates managed in KUBE+ by their associated namespaces.

The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to understand which namespaces or projects (in the case of OpenShift environments) have larger requirements for certificates to be provisioned or managed and also it helps them to streamline the certificate issuance process.

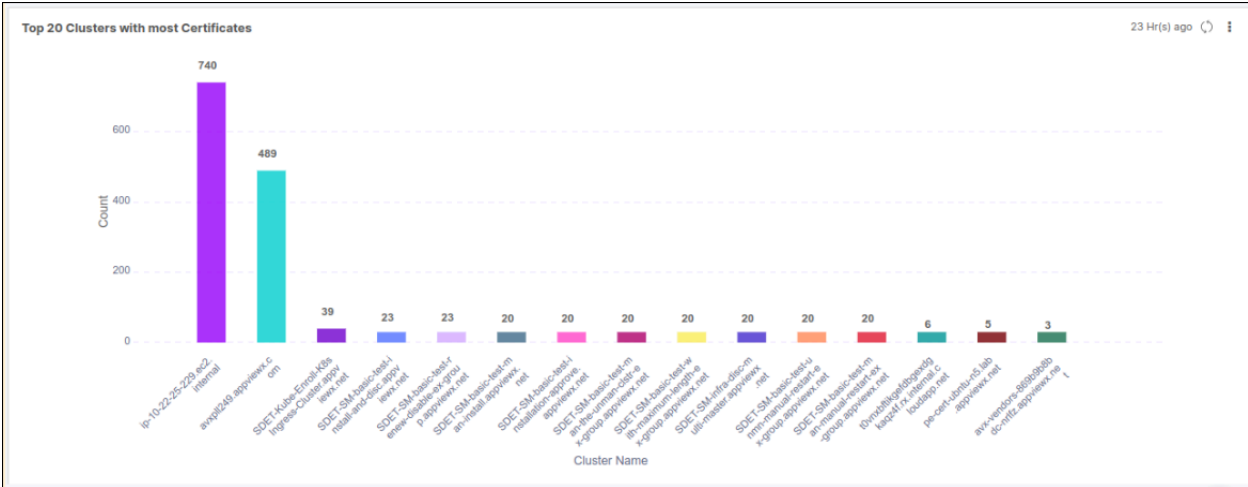
The reports can be further refined by filtering through the secret and the endpoints where the certificates are hosted like ingress and pods with the metadata around the Kubernetes cluster and vendor where the namespaces are discovered.



Top 20 Clusters with Most Certificates

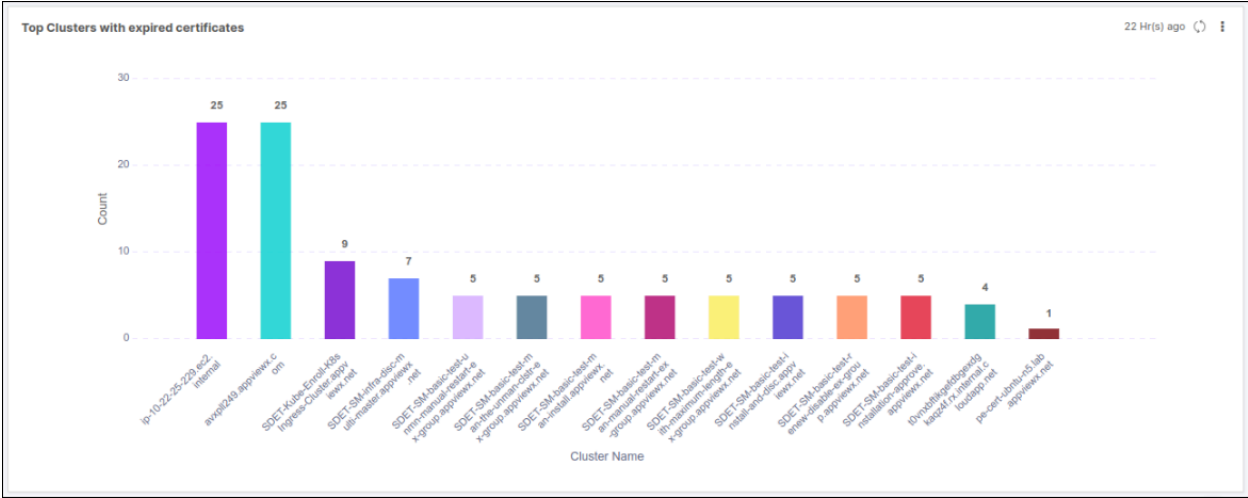
The dashboard provides insights around top 20 clusters which have a maximum of certificates provisioned compared to the other clusters in your infrastructure.

The reports can be further refined by filtering through the Cluster, allowing for insights into cluster name, namespace and secrets that host the certificates.



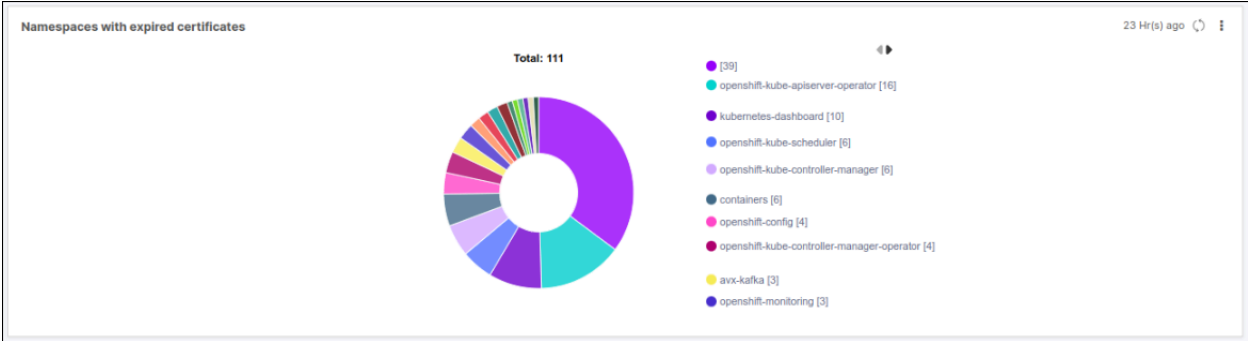
Top Clusters with Expired Certificates

The dashboard provides insights around top clusters which have certificates in expired status. The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to start acting upon defining policies to avoid expiry and outages in near future.



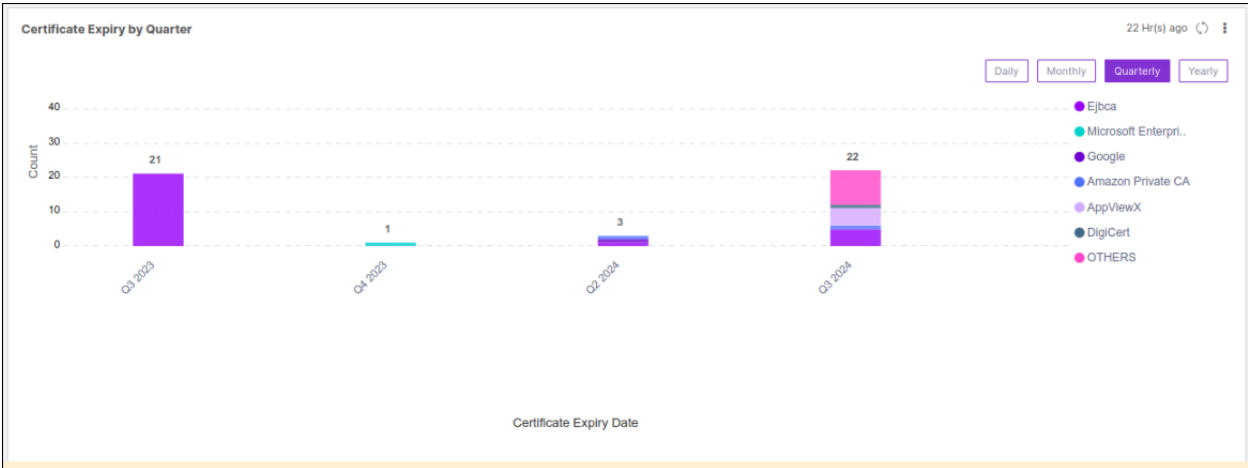
Namespaces with Expired Certificates

The dashboard provides insights around Kubernetes namespaces or OpenShift projects which have certificates in expired status. The report helps the Infosec team or the PKI administrator to start acting upon defining policies to avoid expiry and outages in near future.



Certificate Expiry by Quarter

The dashboard provides insights around the timeline of certificate expiries across your clusters. The expiration of these certificates are shown by Quarters which helps the Infosec or PKI team to plan for renewals or decommissioning of the certificates. The reports can also be timed by Year, Month and Days.



Mesh Certificate Authority


The dashboard provides insights around the CA's configured for Service Mesh mTLS certificate signing.



Viewing Dashboard Inventory

All the dashboards of AppViewX are listed under the Dashboard inventory. From KUBE+ dashboard you can go to AppViewX's Dashboard inventory.


To view dashboard inventory:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click  (**Dashboard Inventory**) on the command bar.
The Dashboard inventory is displayed.

Aligning the Reports

You can drag and drop the reports within the dashboard to the new position and it can be aligned.


To align the reports within the dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Drag and drop the reports to your preferred position.
3. Click the  (**Align**) icon.
The reports are aligned to the new position.

Saving the Dashboard

When you drag and drop the widgets to organize them in the dashboard, complete the following steps to save the changes:


To save a dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. After making necessary changes in the dashboard, click the  (**Save Dashboard**) button in the Command bar.
3. A pop-up message appears at the top of the dashboard, "**Dashboard saved successfully.**"

Downloading the Dashboard Page

You can download the dashboard page as a pdf.


To download the dashboard page as pdf:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click the  (**Download as PDF**) button in the Command bar.
The dashboard is downloaded to your machine as a pdf file.

Scheduling and Emailing the Reports

You can schedule the reports and email them to the email IDs.


To schedule and email the reports:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Click the  (**Schedule and Email Reports**) icon.
3. Enter the necessary details.
The reports will be generated and sent to the email IDs as configured.

Refreshing the Dashboard

You have the option to refresh the data within the dashboard to display the most up-to-date reports..

To refresh the dashboard:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > DASHBOARD**.
2. Drag and drop the reports to your preferred position.
3. Click the  (**Refresh**) icon.

The reports are refreshed within the dashboard.

Policy Enforcement

- [Policy Enforcement Overview](#)
- [Certificate Authority \(CA\) Integration](#)
- [Groups](#)
- [Cluster Policy](#)



Policy Enforcement Overview

To meet compliance and to ensure strong crypto standards PKI policies should be defined and enforced across all your Kubernetes clusters onboarded and managed in KUBE+.

The process for defining and enforcing the policy definition for your managed clusters is as follows.

1. **CA Integration** - Integrate AppViewX KUBE+ with your Internal or External CA's for signing the certificates for your Kubernetes workloads.
2. **CA Policy** - Define CA Policy to enforce your organization crypto standards and map them to Certificate Groups (to categorize certificates based on business units).
3. **Enforce Cluster Policy** - Enforce dedicated CA Policy / PKI policy to one more cluster to promote secure and compliant certificate management practices.

On the CA Policy page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.

	1 to 6 of 6
Show :	
25 Records	
50 Records	
75 Records	
100 Records	

To view the list of policy, go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy.**

- [Configuring Policy Details](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for DigiCert CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Google CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Hydrant ID CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Nexus CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Configuring Policy for Symantec CA](#)

- [Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA](#)
- [Deleting a Policy](#)

Configuring Policy Details

To configure a policy:

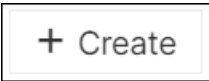
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.




Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

+ Create

2. Click  on the menu bar.
3. On the **CA Policy : Create** page, enter/select the field information for the **Policy Details** section.

Field and Description for the Policy Details Section

Name	Description
*Policy name	Provide a unique name to identify the CA policy name. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters. </div>
Description	Provide a description of the policy.
*Policy Enforcement Type	Select a policy enforcement type. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strict (default) - This enforces the standards defined in the policy where a user cannot modify any parameters. • Suggestive - This suggests users with policy parameters. A user can modify suggested values if required.
Certificate Requests Need Approval	When enabled, it will enforce the peer approval process for any requests made for new/renew/regenerate/reissue or revocation of certificates. Peer approving the request is defined in the approval workflow.
Enable Access to Private Key	When enabled allows the user to download private keys from the holistic view.

Name	Description
Enable certificate push-bind access for a read-only user	Enabling the option might allow the user with the read-only user group to perform certificate push, bind, and rollback operations from the holistic view.
Validate issuer and root certificate for compliance	Enabling the option would validate if the Issuer and Root of the certificate are also compliant with the standard defined in the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- In the **CA details**, select a certificate authority, fill the necessary details, and then click **Save CA Details**.
- In the **Group selection** section, select a group(s) to apply the policy to all the certificates for the selected group.



Note: Additionally, you can find the preferred group(s) by entering the search key word in the **Search** field. The search key words can be added as Favorites for future use.

- In the **Compliance Check** section, you can enable the **Perform Compliance check** option to perform an immediate compliance check.



Note: Scheduled Compliance check will run periodically based on the Job scheduler settings.

- Click **Create Policy**.

Configuring Policy for Amazon CA

To configure an Amazon CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

- Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) to configure the following:


- **Policy Details** section
 - **Group Selection** section
 - **Compliance Check** section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Amazon** under the **CA details** on the left side of the screen.


CA Details for Amazon Policy

Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The Amazon CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Click **Add**.
6. You can use the delete icon against the CA account to delete the configuration.

Certificate Parameter - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Host Name	Enter the host name.
Allowed Domain Names	As you type the domain name, the matching domain names are displayed. Select the desired domain names.
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)</p> </div>

Field	Description
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@)</p> </div>

7. Click **Save CA Details** to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Amazon** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
8. Click **Create Policy**.
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Amazon Private CA

- You must configure the CA setting with Amazon Private CA credentials.
- You must have validated and fetched the Amazon Intermediate CAs along with the issuer region details in the CA settings page.

To configure an Amazon Private CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.




Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Amazon Private CA** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table


Field	Description						
*CA Account	Select the certificate authority account.						
*Issuer Region	Select the issuer region from the dropdown list.						
*Issuer Name	Select the issuer name from the dropdown list.						
*Validity	<p>Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. • Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. • Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment. 						
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one or more than one Bit Length - Key Type from the dropdown list.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy.</p> <p>Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. The Amazon Private CA supports below Bit type and Length.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Type</th> <th>Length</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RSA</td> <td>2048</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>4096</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Type	Length	RSA	2048		4096
Type	Length						
RSA	2048						
	4096						


Field	Description	
	Type	Length
	EC	prime256v1 sec384r1
* Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one or more than one Hash Function from the dropdown list. The supported hash functions are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SHA256 • SHA384 • SHA512. 	
* Signature Algorithm	<p>Select the SignAlgorithm from the dropdown list. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SHA256WITHECDSA • SHA384WITHECDSA • SHA512WITHECDSA • SHA256WITHRSA • SHA384WITHRSA • SHA512WITHRSA. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The Issuer will print the issuer algorithm that the users selected in the Signature Algorithm field. </div>	
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>		

5. In the **Certificate parameters** section, enter/select the following details.

Certificate parameters - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
	 Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)
Organization	You can provide the organization's name. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Organization Unit	You can provide an organization unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is

Field	Description
	<p>enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@) . </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Amazon** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
7. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for DigiCert CA

To configure a DigiCert CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section, to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click digicert in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
* CA Account	The GlobalSign CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Division	Select the division from the dropdown list.
* Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are: Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

Vendor Specific Details

Field	Description
* Server Type	Select the server type from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.


7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.


8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com

Name	Description
	<p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's SubjectOrganization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints.</p>

Name	Description
	Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN) It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@)
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **DigiCert** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for EJBCA CA

To configure an EJBCA CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,

- Policy Details
- Group Selection
- Compliance Check

- On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **EJBCA** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The EJBCA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

Vendor Specific Details Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
End entity user name	Enter the name of the end entity user.
*End entity Profile name	Enter the name of the end entity profile.
*Issuer Common Name	Enter the common user name.
*Certificate Profile Name	Enter a certificate profile name.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

- You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
- In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description	Purpose
*Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any


Name	Description	Purpose
		certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.	The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.
*Hash Function	Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>		

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

Certificate parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com. It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.

Name	Description
	 Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they</p>

Name	Description
	are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark displays in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **EJBCA** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Entrust CA

To configure an Entrust CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click Entrust in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*CA Account	The Entrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are: Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

Field	Description
Additional Emails	Enter the valid email address in the field.


6. Click the **Add** button.
The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **the Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve,** and **Hash Function.**


Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Descriptions Table

Name	Description	Purpose
*Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.	The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.
*Hash Function	Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>		

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p>

Name	Description
	<p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints.</p> <p>The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Entrust MPKI CA

To configure an Entrust MPKI CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click Entrust MPKI in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:


CA Details - Field and Description Table


Field	Description
*CA Accounts	<p>The Entrust CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a CA account from the list to create the policy. • The selected CA account will be listed in the CA Accounts table.
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Field	Description
*: Mandatory fields	

5. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Country code	You can provide a country code. The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Entrust MPKI** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.



Note: The Pop-up message is displayed as **Entrust MPKI - CA details added**.

7. Refer **Configuring Policy Details** section to configure the following:

- **Group Selection** section
 - **Compliance Check** section
8. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
 9. The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA

Before You Begin: The prerequisites for configuring the policy are as follows:

- Certificate Group(s) must be available to map the policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created.
- AppViewX permission required (Accounts > Roles - Click here to check Accounts management).

To configure policy for GlobalSign Atlas CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** button to configure GlobalSign Atlas custom policy.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
 - Policy Details section
 - Group Selection section
 - Compliance Check section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign Atlas** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The updated fields for the CA are displayed on the right side of page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The GlobalSign Atlas CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed here. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.

Field Name	Description
*Validity	<p>Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. • Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. • Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed here. You can select one (or) more Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Enter the desired values above and click **Add**.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.

6. You can use the **Edit** (pencil) option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** (bin) option to delete the configuration.
7. Enter values in the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*Host Name	Enter the hostname for the certificate. The hostname should not start and end with a dot/full stop (.)
*Allowed Domain Names	Enter only the white-listed domain names. Press enter after adding the domain name. multiple domain names can be added.
Common Name	You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Click the **Save CA Details** button.
9. Select groups from the **Group selection** section and indicate for **Compliance check** using the toggle button in the respective section.
10. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.

The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign CA

To configure a GlobalSign CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
5. In the **Vendor Specific Details** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

Vendor Specific Details - Fields and Description Table

Field	Description
*Incorporating Agency Reg. No	Enter the agency registration number.
*Designation	Enter the designation.
*Business Category	Select the business category from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type**, **ECDSA curve**, and **Hash Function**.


The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:


CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)</p> </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the mail address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the GlobalSign option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for GlobalSign MSSL CA

To configure a GlobalSign MSSL CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** button to configure GlobalSign MSSL based policy.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details** section
 - **Group Selection** section
 - **Compliance Check** section
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **GlobalSign MSSL** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
* CA Accounts	The GlobalSign MSSL CA accounts configured on the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Product Type	All Managed SSL Product Types require that the Organization's information and at least one Domain be registered in the Managed SSL account prior to ordering.
* Signature Algorithm	Select the Signature Algorithm from the drop-down list.
* MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name	Select the MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name from the drop-down list.
* Validity	Provide the value and press Enter . Enforce Certificate Validity period for selected Certificate Type. The certificate validity of GlobalSign MSSL CA is represented in Day(s) and Year(s). One (or) more than one period can be added.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Select **CA accounts, Product Type, Signature Algorithm, MSSL Profile Allowed Domain Name, and Validity** under **CA details** section and provide **Validity** period.
6. Click **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message is displayed.
7. You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

The following table provides the field description under the **CA Details** section:

Bit Length and ECDSA curve- Field and Description Table

Name	Description
* Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down. The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are compliant with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
* ECDSA Curve	The ECDSA curve's values get auto-populated once the details are configured/selected and the Add button is clicked. A discovered certificate's key elliptic curves will be compared against the information to identify if there is a complaint. Additionally, the below details will also be enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using the P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling for a certificate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function** under **CA details** section.

The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Host Name	You can provide the hostname. The hostname should not start and end with a dot/fullstop(.).
Common Name	You can provide the common name.For example, *.domain.com It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate. Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).
Organization	You can provide organization name.

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's SubjectOrganization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if there are complaints. Organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Organization Unit	You can provide an organizational unit. The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if there is a Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Locality	You can provide a locality. The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
State	You can provide state. The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if there is a complaint. State is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Country code	You can provide a country code. The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if there are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide the organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the mail address provided in the policy to identify if there is a complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. .
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject's alternative name (SAN)

Name	Description
	<p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <p>Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com.</p> <p>Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p>
*: Mandatory fields	

9. You can fill in the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.
10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **GlobalSign MSSLOption** to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message is displayed.

Configuring Policy for GoDaddy CA

To configure a GoDaddy CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click GoDaddy in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*CA Account	The GoDaddy CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are: Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select/enter the details as listed in the table:

Vendor Specific Details section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*Slot Size	Select the size of the slot from the dropdown list.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

7. You can use **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function** in the **CA details** section.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.


Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>SupportedHash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	


9. You can fill **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com

Name	Description
	<p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are</p>

Name	Description
	complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).
*: Mandatory fields	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **GoDaddy** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
12. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Google CA

To configure a Google CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Google** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*CA Accounts	The Google CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Issuer Location	The Issuer Location corresponding to the selected CA account is listed. Select an Issuer Location from the list to create the policy.
*Issuer Name	The Issuer Name corresponding to the selected issuer location is listed. Select an Issuer Name from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	Provide the value and press Enter . Enforce Validity period for selected Issuer Name. The validity for Google CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one Validity period can be added.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. In the CA details section, select the **Bit Length -Key Type(s), ECDSA curve(s), and Hash Function(s)**.

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>

Name	Description
* ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
* Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.



For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Strict**


For the Policy Enforcement Type = **Suggestive**

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Hostname	<p>This text field is displayed if the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict or Suggestive.</p> <p>Enter the unique name or label for the host.</p> <p>The field is mandatory only when the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict.</p>

Name	Description
	 Note: The hostname should not start or end with a dot.
Allowed Domain Name	<p>This text field is displayed if the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict or Suggestive.</p> <p>The field is mandatory only when the Policy Enforcement Type = Strict.</p> <p>Enter the valid domain name (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com)</p> <p>.</p>
Blocked Domain Name	<p>This text field is displayed only if the Policy Enforcement Type = Suggestive.</p> <p>Enter the domain names (two parts separated by a dot, such as example.com) that need to be blocked.</p> <p>.</p>
Common Name	<p>This is a non-editable field. It has comma-separated values of possible domain names which are allowed. It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
State	You can provide state. The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, and Renew, Regenerate.
Country code	You can provide a country code. The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Google** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.

9. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
10. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for HashiCorp Vault CA

Before You Begin

- Certificate Group(s) must be available to map the Policy to them.
- CA accounts (settings) must be available to which the policy is going to be created.
- Key Algorithm, Encryption Type must be available under the CA accounts.
- AppViewX permission required (Accounts > Roles - Click here to check Accounts management).

To configure a HashiCorp Vault CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, enter details in the **Policy Details** section as described in the tables below.

Policy Details - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*Policy Name	Provide a unique name to identify the CA policy name. NOTE: No special characters other than '.', '-', and '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
Description	Provide a description of the policy.
Type	Select Strict (or) Suggestive. By default, Strict is selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Strict - This enforces the standards defined in the policy where a user cannot modify any parameters. • Suggestive - This suggests users with policy parameters. A user can modify suggested values if required.

Field Name	Description
Approval Required	When enabled, it will enforce the peer approval process for any requests made for new/renew/regenerate/reissue or revocation of certificates. Peer approving the request is defined in the approval workflow
Private Key Access	When enabled allows the user to download private keys from the holistic view.
Include Root and Intermediate certificates for compliance check	Enabling the option would validate if the Issuer and Root of the certificate are also compliant with the standard defined in the policy.
*: Mandatory fields	

- In the **CA Details** section, a list box **Certificate Authority** on the left displays all the available CAs. Select **Hashicorp Vault**.
- Update the following fields in the **CA Details** section as described in the table below.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*CA Settings	The dropdown contains the names of the accounts created.
*Secret Engine	The single-select dropdown contains all the secret engines associated with the account. In a secret engine, a role describes an identity with a set of permissions, groups, or policies you want to attach to a user of the secret engine. User identity is often mapped to a specific role. Hence, a single secret engine needs to be selected to populate Role (below) specific to it.
*Role	The dropdown contains all the roles mapped to the secret engine.
*: Mandatory fields	

- Click the **Add** button.

The **HashiCorp Vault CA Details** table below the Add button displays the selected values in the dropdown.

Multiple values can be configured based on the available CA settings and secret engines with different *Bit Length - Key Type* and *Hash Function*. The supported values are as follows:

- a. **Key Type:** RSA, EC
- b. **Bit Length:**
 - i. *RSA key type:* 2048 (default), 3072, or 4096
 - ii. *EC key type:* 224, 256 (default), 384, or 521
- c. **Hash Function:** SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512

The CA Details table has options to View, Edit, and Delete.

- a. To view the CA details, click the View link in the View column - The CA account details are displayed in a pop-up window with the *Bit Length - Key Type* and *Hash Function*.
 - b. To update the CA details, select the edit or pencil icon in the Edit column.
 - c. To delete the CA details, select the bin or delete icon.
7. Update the Certificate Parameters in the CA details section as described in the table below.




Note: The parameters are useful during certificate enrollment. One can pre-populate the listed certificate parameters when setting-up/requesting a certificate.

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
Common Name	Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or common name that exactly matches the web browser. NOTE: The only special characters allowed are the asterisk (*), hyphen (-), and period (.).
Organization	The name of the organization.
Organization Unit	The name of the organization unit.
Locality	The city in which the organization is located.
State	The state in which the organization is located.
Country	Country in which the organization is located.
Email	The email Ids of the organization contact. NOTE: Multiple comma-separated values are allowed. <i>Example:</i> admin@email.com, user@email.com

Field Name	Description
Subject Alternative Name	<p>Enter the additional hostnames such as alternative websites or IP addresses that have to be protected with a single SSL certificate.</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <p>NOTE: The only special characters allowed are the asterisk (*), hyphen (-), period (.), and the at sign (@).</p>

 **Note:** The discovered certificate's parameters (Organization, Organization Unit, Locality, State, Country, and Email) will be compared against the same parameters provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. They are enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.

**: Mandatory fields*

8. Click the **Save CA Details** button.

A green tick mark is displayed in the Certificate Authority pane against the HashiCorp Vault option to indicate the details are successfully saved.

9. In the **Group Selection**, select one or more groups to map to the policy. Refer to the **Certificate Group** section to add/update groups.

10. Under the **Compliance Check** section, enable the **Perform Compliance Check** option to perform an immediate compliance check.

11. Click the **Create Policy** button.

The Policy is created successfully.

Configuring Policy for Hydrant ID CA

To configure the Hydrant ID CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.

3. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following,
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
4. On the **CA Policy: Create** page, click **Hydrant ID** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
5. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the challenge type from the dropdown list.
6. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
7. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
8. Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function in the CA details** section.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:


Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
* Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
* ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>


Name	Description
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: Mandatory fields	

9. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced</p>

Name	Description
	while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>

Name	Description
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

10. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Hydrant ID** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
11. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Let's Encrypt CA

To configure the Let's Encrypt CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.
The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.
4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

- To configure a policy with LetsEncrypt details, click **LetsEncrypt** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.
- In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the challenge type from the dropdown list.
- Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

- You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
- Select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, Hash Function in the CA details** section.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:


Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description	Purpose
* Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down. The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.	
* ECDSA curve	When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA	

Name	Description	Purpose
	<p>curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>	
* Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>	
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>		

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p>

Name	Description
	<p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints.</p> <p>The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **LetsEncrypt** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.

- Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Microsoft Enterprise CA

To configure the Microsoft Enterprise CA policy:

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

- Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
- Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

- Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
- To configure a policy with Microsoft Enterprise details, click **Microsoft Enterprise** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The Microsoft Enterprise CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*MS Template List	The MS template(s) configured for the selected CA account are listed. Select MS template(s) from the list to associate with the policy.
*: Mandatory fields	

- Select **CA accounts** and **MS Template List** under **CA details** section.
- Click **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
- You can use **the Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	


10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested.</p> <p>Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>

Name	Description
	 Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing</p>

Name	Description
	any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN)</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Microsoft Enterprise** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Microsoft Standalone CA

To configure the Microsoft Standalone CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.
On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
5. To configure a policy with Microsoft Standalone details, click **Microsoft Standalone** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The Microsoft Standalone accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Select **CA accounts** in the **CA details** section.
7. Click **Add** button. The CA account is saved to the table and confirmation message displays.
8. You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select the **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the description of other fields in the **CA Details** section:

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any</p>


Name	Description
	certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	


10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description under **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested.</p> <p>Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will </div>

Name	Description
	 only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **Microsoft Standalone** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **+ Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Nexus CA

To configure the Nexus CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.

3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with Nexus details, click **Nexus** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

6. Select **CA accounts and Certificate Type** under the **CA details** section and provide the **Validity** period.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The Nexus CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	Provide the value and press Enter . Enforce Validity period for selected Certificate Type(s). The validity for Nexus CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one Validity period can be added.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Once the CA account and the validity fields are populated, a new section called **Vendor Specific Details** is enabled. Select the **Procedure** field from the drop-down list and click **Add** to save the CA details to the table. You can also use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

Select the details as follows:

- a. **Case 1** - Select **Server** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - Mapped to servers and default procedures.
- b. **Case 2** - Select **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to client and default procedures.
- c. **Case 2** - Select **Server** and **Client** check box, the procedures listed in the **Procedures** dropdown will be - mapped to server, client, and default procedures.



Note: The procedures displayed in the dropdown should have the **cert type** appended in the value. For example: - *Procedure name_Server/client/default/Code-Signing*

8. Click the **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
9. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
10. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type**, **ECDSA curve**, and **Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	


11. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.).</p> </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	You can provide an organization unit.

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Locality	You can provide a locality. The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
State	You can provide state. The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Country code	You can provide a country code. The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN). It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.

Name	Description
	 Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).
*: Mandatory fields	

12. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Nexus** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
13. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
14. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for OpenTrust CA

To configure the OpenTrust CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:
 - **Policy Details**
 - **Group Selection**
 - **Compliance Check**
5. To configure a policy with OpenTrust details, click OpenTrust in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section.

Field	Description
*CA Account	The OpenTrust CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Management Profile	Select the certificate management profile from the dropdown list.
*Zone	Select the zone from the dropdown list.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. In the **Profile Parameters** section, select/enter the details as listed in the table.

Profile Parameters Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*Common Name	Enter the common name for the policy.
Organizational Unit	Enter the organizational unit.
Organization	Enter the name of the organization.
*: Mandatory fields	

7. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

8. You can use the **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the description of other fields in the **CA Details** section:

Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description
*Bit Length - Key Type	<p>All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length. You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any</p>


Name	Description
	certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	<p>When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down. for a certificate.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend to use P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.</p>
*Hash Function	<p>SupportedHash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards. The following table provides the field description under the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing</p>

Name	Description
	<p>any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaint. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p>

Name	Description
	The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Email	You can provide an organization unit mail address. The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Subject Alternative Name	You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN) It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@). </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark displays in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **OpenTrust** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Symantec CA

To configure the Symantec CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with Symantec details, click **Symantec** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the page.

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section.

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
* CA Account	The Symantec CA accounts configured in CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
* Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
* Validity	Enter the validity period for the certificate. The available options are: Days - You can enter more than one validity period in days, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Month - You can enter more than one validity period in Months, to choose one in certificate enrolment. Year - You can enter more than one validity period in Year, to choose one in certificate enrolment.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. In the **Vendor Specific Details section**, select the server type from the dropdown list.
7. Click the **Add** button.

The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.

8. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.

9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve,** and **Hash Function.**

The following table provides the field description in the **CA Details** section:


Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description	Purpose
*Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down for a certificate.	The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.
*Hash Function	Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>		

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com.</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>

Name	Description
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against **the Symantec** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click the **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

Configuring Policy for Trustwave CA

To configure the Trustwave CA policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default policies they are Default and Certificate-Gateway.

2. Create a custom policy by clicking the **Create** button on the upper right corner of the CA Policy page.
3. Click **+ Create** on the top-right of the page.

The **CA Policy: Create** page is displayed.

4. Refer [Configuring Policy Details](#) section to configure the following:

- **Policy Details**
- **Group Selection**
- **Compliance Check**

5. To configure a policy with Trustwave details, click **Trustwave** in the **Certificate Authority** pane on the left side of the screen.

6. Select **CA accounts and Certificate Type** under the **CA details** section and provide the **Validity** period.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:

CA Details - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Accounts	The Trustwave CA accounts configured in the CA settings screen are listed. Select a CA account from the list to create the policy.
*Certificate Type	The Certificate Types corresponding to the selected CA account are listed. Select one (or) more Certificate Type from the list to create the policy.
*Validity	Provide the value and press Enter . Enforce Validity period for selected Certificate Type(s). The validity for Trustwave CA can be represented in Day(s)/ Month(s)/ Year(s). One (or) more than one Validity period can be added.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click the **Add** button. The CA details are saved to the table and the confirmation message displays.
8. You can use the **Edit** option in the table to modify the configuration and **Remove** option to delete the configuration.
9. In the **CA details** section, select **Bit Length -Key Type, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function**.

The following table provides the field description under **CA Details** section:


Bit Length, ECDSA curve, and Hash Function - Field and Description Table


Name	Description	Purpose
*Bit Length - Key Type	All the Key Types are listed with corresponding Bit Length . You can select one (or) more than one Bit Length - Key Type(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Type and Bit length will be compared against the selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Bit Length - Key Type(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
*ECDSA curve	When Key Type is selected as EC, ECDSA curve corresponding to selected Key Type is listed. You can select one (or) more than one ECDSA curve from the drop-down for a certificate.	The discovered certificate's Key elliptic curves will be compared against the selected ECDSA curve(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected ECDSA curve(s) is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate. We recommend using P256/ P384/ P521 ECDSA curve while enrolling.
*Hash Function	Supported Hash Function(s) are listed. You can select one (or) more than one Hash Function(s) from the drop-down.	The discovered certificate's Key Hash Algorithm will be compared against the selected Hash Function(s) to identify if they are complaint with the policy. Selected Hash Function(s) is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, Regenerate.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>		

10. You can fill the **Certificate parameters** section based on your organization's policies and standards.

The following table provides the field description in the **Certificate parameters** section:

Certificate Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	<p>You can provide the common name. For example, *.domain.com</p> <p>It helps enforce domains for which a certificate can be requested. Common Name is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.). </div>
Organization	<p>You can provide the organization's name.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization will be compared against the organization provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The organization is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Organization Unit	<p>You can provide an organization unit.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Subject Organization Unit will be compared against the organization unit provided in the policy to identify if they are Complaint. Organization Unit is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Locality	<p>You can provide a locality.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Locality will be compared against the locality provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. The locality is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
State	<p>You can provide state.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's State will be compared against the state provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints.</p>

Name	Description
	The state is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.
Country code	<p>You can provide a country code.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's Country code will be compared against the country code provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Country code is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Email	<p>You can provide an organization unit mail address.</p> <p>The discovered certificate's mail address will be compared against the email address provided in the policy to identify if they are complaints. Mail address is enforced while performing any certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p>
Subject Alternative Name	<p>You can provide the subject alternative name (SAN).</p> <p>It helps enforce additional domains for which a certificate can be requested. Subject Alternative Name is enforced while performing certificate request operations such as New, Renew, and Regenerate.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;"> <p> Note: Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.), At (@).</p> </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

11. Click the **Save CA Details** button to save the configuration. A green tick mark will be displayed in the **Certificate Authority** pane against the **Trustwave** option to indicate the details are successfully stored.
12. Click **Create Policy** button to create a new policy.
13. The policy is created and a confirmation message displays.

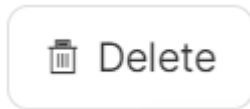
Deleting a Policy

To delete a policy,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > CA Policy**.

On the **CA Policy** page, the configured policies are displayed, if any.

2. Select a policy from the list.



3. Click .
4. On the **Confirmation** popup, click **Yes**.

Certificate Authority (CA) Integration

Service Mesh can be integrated with your Enterprise Internal PKI only for signing application workloads with mTLS certificates.

AppViewX supports integrating with EJBCA and Microsoft CA for signing the mTLS service mesh workloads.

- [Custom CA](#)
- [AppViewX CA](#)
- [AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)
- [Amazon and Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Segito CA](#)
- [DigiCert CA](#)
- [DigiCert MPKI](#)
- [EJBCA CA](#)
- [Entrust](#)
- [Entrust MPKI](#)
- [GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [GlobalSign Atlas CA](#)
- [GoDaddy CA](#)
- [Google CA](#)
- [Certificate Authority Service CA](#)
- [HashiCorp Vault CA](#)

- [InCommon CA](#)
- [Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Nexus](#)
- [OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Symantec CA](#)
- [Trustwave CA](#)

Custom CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Custom CA](#)

Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Custom CA account in AppViewX:


- A logo to use it for the custom CA.
- An optional CA certificate and key to be used as a root certificate.


Configuring Custom CA

To configure the custom CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
* Custom CA Name	A unique name to identify the CA name. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: No special characters allowed. </div>
* Upload Custom CA Logo	Upload a logo for the custom CA. This logo will appear in the product representing the custom CA.


Name	Description
Custom CA Certificate	Upload a certificate for the custom CA. This certificate will become the root certificate. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: The <code><.pfx></code> and <code><.p12></code> are certificate types are supported. </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

- Once the logo and certificate are uploaded, the entered CA will appear in the CA list with the logo presented.
- Once the logo is added, users can click **Configure Now** to input the CA details.
- Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

Name	Description
*Name	Client authentication certificate for API communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

- Update the following details in the **ROOT CSR parameters** section as described in the table:

Root CSR - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	The common name of the root certificate. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.) </div>
Algorithm	Type of the root certificate.
Hash Function	The hash function for the root certificate.

Name	Description
Organization Unit	Name of the Organisation unit.
Key Length	Key length for the root certificate.
Organization	Organization attribute for the root certificate.
Locality	Locality attribute for the root certificate.
State or Province	State attribute for the root certificate.
Country	Country attribute for the root certificate.
Email Address	Email address for the root certificate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Update the following details in the **Root Validity** section as described in the table.

Name	Description
*Start Date	Start date of the certificate issuance.
*End Date	End date of the certificate issuance.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Click **Save**.

Once the setting is saved, the user will be directed to the root certificate submission holistic view.

9. Users can submit and fetch the root certificate.

10. On the CA setting page user can see the status of the created setting.

AppViewX CA

- [Configuring AppViewX CA](#)
- [Validating AppViewX CA](#)

Configuring AppViewX CA

To configure the AppViewX CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Select **AppViewX** from the left-side vendor list.
The **AppViewX** home page is displayed.
3. Click the **Configure Now** or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.



Note: The **Configure Now** option is displayed if you are configuring a CA for the first time.

The **AppViewX** configuration page is displayed.

4. Enter/Select the following details in the **General Information** section:



General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
CRL Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Enter/Select the following **Credentials**-related information:


Credentials - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Credential type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual Entry: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)
Access key*	Enter the access key for the customer's AWS account.

Field	Description
	 Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry .
Secret key*	Enter the secret key for the customer's AWS account.  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry .
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CSR Parameters** section as described in the table:

CSR Parameters - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Common Name	The common name of the root certificate.  Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use Asterisk (*) for the host part of the FQDN to enforce the domain. For example, *.domain.com will only allow users to request certificates with domain domain.com. • Allowed Special Characters: Asterisk (*), Hyphen (-), Period (.)
Issuer Name	Name of the certificate issuer.
Algorithm	Type of the root certificate.
Hash Function	The hash function for the root certificate.
Organization Unit	Name of the Organisation unit.
Key Length	Key length for the root certificate.
Organization	Organization attribute for the root certificate.
Locality	Locality attribute for the root certificate.

Name	Description
State or Province	State attribute for the root certificate.
Country	Country attribute for the root certificate.
Email Address	Email address for the root certificate.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Update the following details in the **Validity** section as described in the table.

Name	Description
*Start Date	Start date of the certificate issuance.
*End Date	End date of the certificate issuance.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

8. Click **Save**.

Once the setting is saved, the user will be directed to the root certificate submission holistic view.

9. Users can submit and fetch the root certificate.

10. On the CA setting page, user can see the status of the created setting.

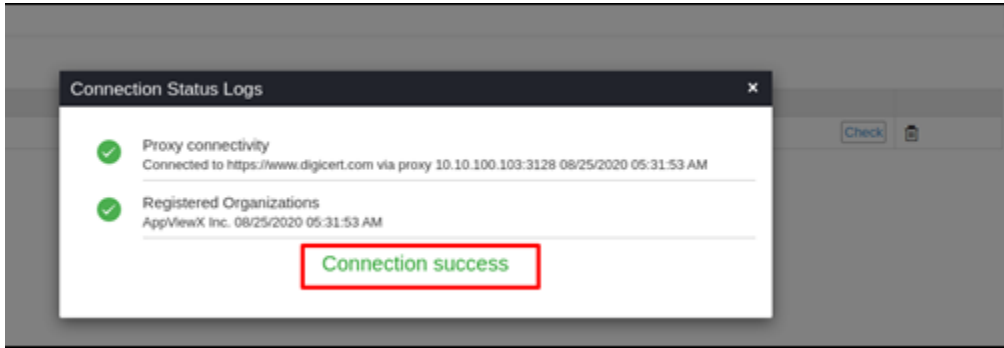
Validating AppViewX CA

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**

2. Select the **AppViewX** in the left side vendor list.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



AppViewX PKIaaS CA

- [Configuring AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)
- [Validating AppViewX PKIaaS CA](#)

Configuring AppViewX PKIaaS CA

To configure the AppViewX PKIaaS CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **AppViewX PKIaaS** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Name	Description
Data Center	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
* Region	Region of the certificate.
* Configure With	The method of certificate type to upload.
* Upload JSON	Option to upload the certificate file.
* Email Address	Email address of the user.
* Project Id	ID of the project.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Select **Fetch Procedures**.



Note: The procedures available in the AppViewX PKIaaS CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific user.

7. To map the fetched procedures, click on one or many and click the **Actions** dropdown:

- a. **CASE 1** - If the user selects Server only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Server.** and **MAP as Default**
- b. **CASE 2** - If the user selects Client only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Client.** and **MAP as Default**
- c. **CASE 3** - If the user selects Server and Client both in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will have both the actions **Map as Client** , **Map as Server**, and **MAP as Default**

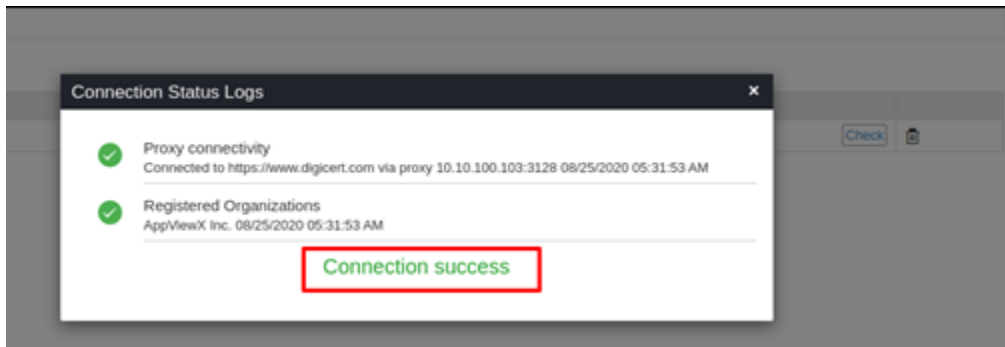
8. Click **Save**.

Validating AppViewX PKIaaS CA

Once the AppViewX PKIaaS settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and AppViewX PKIaaS is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **AppViewX PKIaaS** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Amazon and Amazon Private CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Amazon CA](#)
- [Configuring Amazon Private CA](#)
- [Validating Amazon](#)

Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Amazon CA or Amazon Private CA account in AppViewX

- An Amazon account for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>

- Policy JSON for AWS Ec2 Instance Certificate Management.
- Prerequisite for Amazon CA:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ssm:SendCommand",
        "ssm:DescribeDocument",
        "ec2:DescribeInstances",
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "ssm:CreateDocument",
        "ssm:GetCommandInvocation",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "ssm:DescribeInstanceInformation",
        "ssm:GetDocument",
        "s3:DeleteObject",
        "s3:GetBucketLocation"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Classic and Application LoadBalancers:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetServerCertificate",
        "elasticloadbalancing:DescribeLoadBalancers",

```

```

"elasticloadbalancing:ModifyListener",
"elasticloadbalancing:DescribeListeners",
"acm:GetCertificate",
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
"elasticloadbalancing:DescribeTargetHealth",
"acm:ImportCertificate",
"elasticloadbalancing:SetLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate",
"iam:UploadServerCertificate"
],

```

```
"Resource": ""
```

```
}
```

```
]
```

```
}
```

Policy JSON for Certificate Management in AWS Cloudfront:

```
{
```

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
"Statement": [
```

```
{
```

```
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",
```

```
"Effect": "Allow",
```

```
"Action": [
```

```
"ec2:DescribeRegions",
```

```
"cloudfront:ListDistributions",
```

```
"cloudfront:UpdateDistribution",
```

```
"cloudfront:GetDistributionConfig"
```

```
],
```

```
"Resource": ""
```

```
}
```

```
]
```

```
}
```

Policy JSON for IAM Certificate Management:

```
{
```

```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
"Statement": [
```

```
{
```

```
"Sid": "VisualEditor0",
```

```
"Effect": "Allow",
```

```

"Action": [
  "iam:GetServerCertificate",
  "iam:UpdateServerCertificate",
  "iam:ListServerCertificates",
  "ec2:DescribeRegions",
  "iam:UploadServerCertificate"
],
"Resource": "*"
}
]
}

```

Policy JSON for ACM Certificate Management:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "acm:DescribeCertificate",
        "acm:RequestCertificate",
        "acm:GetCertificate",
        "ec2:DescribeRegions",
        "acm:ListCertificates",
        "acm:ImportCertificate"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}

```

Prerequisite for Amazon Private CA.

Policies and Permissions required for AWS IAM User:

```

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "VisualEditor0",

```

```

"Effect": "Allow",

"Action": [

"s3:PutObject",

"s3:GetObjectAcl",

"s3:GetObject",

"s3:PutObjectAcl"

],

"Resource": [

"arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>",

"arn:aws:s3:::<bucketname>/*"

]

},

{

"Sid": "VisualEditor1",

"Effect": "Allow",

"Action": [

"acm-pca:GetCertificate",

"ec2:DescribeRegions",

"acm-pca:GetCertificateAuthorityCertificate",

"acm-pca:RevokeCertificate",

"acm:RenewCertificate",

"acm-pca:ListCertificateAuthorities",

"acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",

"acm-pca:CreateCertificateAuthorityAuditReport",

"s3:ListAllMyBuckets",

"acm:DescribeCertificate",

"acm-pca:IssueCertificate",

"acm:RequestCertificate",

"acm:GetCertificate",

"acm:ListCertificates",

"acm-pca:DescribeCertificateAuthority"

],

"Resource": "*"

}

]

AWS Simple Storage Service (S3) Bucket Policy for parsing Audit log:

{

```

```

"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
{
"Effect": "Allow",
"Principal": {
"Service": "acm-pca.amazonaws.com"
},
"Action": [
"s3:PutObject",
"s3:PutObjectAcl",
"s3:GetBucketAcl",
"s3:GetBucketLocation"
],
"Resource": [
"arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name/*",
"arn:aws:s3:::bucket_name"
]
}
]
}

```

Configuring Amazon CA

To configure the Amazon CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Select **Amazon** from the left-side vendor list.
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
3. To configure Amazon CA, click the **ACM CA** tab from the home page.
4. Click the **Configure Now** or **+Add** icon from the middle or top-right of the page respectively.



Note: The **Configure Now** option is displayed if you are configuring a CA for the first time.

The **Amazon** configuration page is displayed.

5. Enter/Select the following details in the **General Information** section:



General Information - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
* Account Type	From the dropdown list, select one of the following account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standalone (Traditional access key- and secret key-based communication) • Cross or Federated (Authentication using assume role)
* Account Name	Unique name for the certificate authority (CA) account represented during certificate enrollment and policy creation
* Account Number	Valid AWS account number
Account Description	Additional information related to the CA account being configured
* Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server • Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
* Default Region	Default region for API communication
* Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter/Select the following **Credentials**-related information:



Credentials - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Credential type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type:



Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual Entry: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer’s AWS account)
Access key*	Enter the access key for the customer’s AWS account. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>
Secret key*	Enter the secret key for the customer’s AWS account. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

7. Enter/Select the following details in the **Discover resources** section:

Discover Resources - Field and Description Table

Field	Description				
Role ARN for Resource Discovery*	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Account Type is Cross or Federated. </div> To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click . b. Enter the following details: <table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Role Session name</td> <td> Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons. </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	Description	Role Session name	Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.
Field	Description				
Role Session name	Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session. Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.				

Field	Description			
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> </table>	Field	Description	
Field	Description			
	<p>Duration Seconds</p>	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>		
	<p>External Id</p>	<p>External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.</p>		
	<p>Source Identity</p>	<p>The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.</p>		
	<p>Session Tags</p>	<p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>		
<p>Service Region*</p>	<p>To select a service region:</p>			

Field	Description
	<p>a. To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click Fetch Region.</p> <p>The retrieved service regions are populated in the Select the Region(s) dropdown list.</p> <p>b. From the Select the Region(s) dropdown list, select the required service region.</p>
Discover Certificate	To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.
Cert Sync*	<p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managed: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions. • Monitored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates. • Ignored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled.
Auto Sync	<p>To enable/disable automatic schedule-based synchronization:</p> <p>a. For Auto Sync, select the Yes checkbox.</p> <p>b. For Schedule based discovery, use the two dropdown lists to select a duration. For example, to schedule the auto sync after every 2 days, from the first dropdown list, select 2 and from the second dropdown list, select Days.</p> <p>By default, the auto sync is set to 1 Hours.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The Schedule based discovery dropdown lists are displayed only when Auto Sync is enabled. </div>
Route53 Zone Auto Approval	<p>To support DNS validation as an automatic process, enable this toggle.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ffc107; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Important: If Route53 has been configured for any of the older Amazon Public CAs, ensure that, after migration, the zones are manually updated. </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

Configuring Amazon Private CA

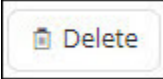
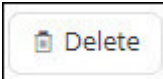
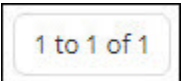

To configure the Amazon Private CA:

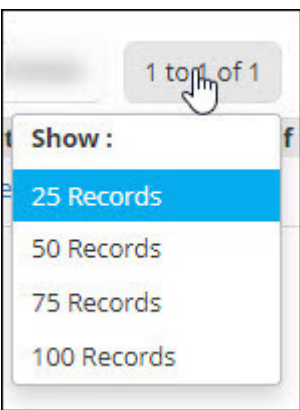


- 1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
- 2. Select **Amazon** from the left-side vendor list.
The **Amazon** home page is displayed.
- 3. To configure Amazon CA, click the **AWS Private CA** tab from the home page.


The **Amazon** home page is updated to display the inventory grid as shown in the image. In the inventory grid for the Amazon Private CA, master and child account details are logged as separate entries, instead of having just one master entry.

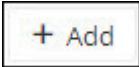
Fields in the inventory grid are explained in the table below:

AWS Private CA - Screen Description Table

Field	Description
Search	Use the Search field to search for accounts, by entering the value of one of the details listed in the inventory grid.
	To delete one or more accounts: a. From the inventory grid, select the checkbox corresponding to the account(s) you want to delete. b. Click  i Tip: To delete all accounts listed in the inventory grid, select the checkbox in the grid header.
	To set the number of records that should be displayed on one page: a. Click  b. From the Show menu displayed, select the required value.

Field	Description
	
	<p>If the inventory grid spans more than one page, use this control to navigate the pages, one page at a time.</p>
Account Name	<p>This is the unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account entered at the time of account creation.</p>
Account Number	<p>AWS account number</p>
Account Type	<p>Multi account: Indicates that the account is a cross account Single account: Indicates that the account is a standalone account</p>
CA Status	<p>For an account, after all configuration details for Amazon Private CA are entered, you will be required to click the Fetch issuer and save button to sync and discover the issuers and the respective certificates for that account.</p> <p>The CA Status field shows the current status of this sync and discovery process.</p> <p>Possible values for this field are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completed • In progress <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: An account entry in the grid will be disabled till the CA Status is In progress. </div>

Field	Description
Connection Status	To validate if connection has been established with the CA, click Check . If a connection has been established, this field is updated to display Success or Failure .
No. of Issuers	This field displays the number of issuers associated with the account. <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: For a master account, this field will show the number of issuers associated with only the master account. The value does not include the number of issuers associated with the child account. </div>
*: Mandatory fields	

4. To add an account, click **Configure Now** (if you are creating your first account) or click  from the top-right corner of the screen.

The **Amazon** page is updated to display fields for entering the CA configuration-related information.

5. On this screen, enter the following **Basic Information**:



Basic Information - Field and Description Table


Field	Description
Account type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the customer's AWS account type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standalone: The user account and the resources are available in the same account. • Cross or Federated: Resources are available across multiple accounts and users are given role-based access.
Account name*	Enter a unique name for the Certificate Authority (CA) account that will be used during certificate enrollment and policy creation.
Account number*	Enter the customer's AWS account number.
Account Description	Enter any additional details related to the account, if required.

Field	Description
Purpose/ Usage*	From the dropdown list, select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account.
Proxy Required	To allow all communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) to use the proxy details (provided in general settings; refer the Platform User Guide for more details), select this checkbox.
Default Region*	From the dropdown list, select the default region for API communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA Agent)	From the dropdown list, select the data center that will be used to establish communication with the Certificate Authority (CA)
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Enter the following **Credentials**-related information:



Credentials - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Credential type*	From the dropdown list, from the following options, select the credential type: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual Entry: Manually enter the access and secret key for the customer's AWS account)
Access key*	Enter the access key ID for the customer's AWS account. The access key and the secret access key (entered in the following field) are used together to authenticate requests. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>
Secret key*	Enter the secret access key ID for the customer's AWS account. The access key (entered in the previous field) and the secret access key are used together to authenticate requests. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Manual Entry. </div>




Field	Description
Credential name*	<p>If the customer's AWS credentials are stored in CyberArk, from the dropdown list, select the CyberArk credential name.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Credential type is set to Credential List - CyberArk. </div>
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. In the **Discover resources** section, enter the following details:

Discover Resources - Field and Description Table

Field	Description						
Role ARN for Resource Discovery*	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Account Type is Cross or Federated. </div> <p>To let the master account assume role for the child account (get temporary privileges to discover resources from the child account), configure the role ARN for resource discovery:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Click . b. Enter the following details: <table border="1" style="width: 100%; margin-top: 10px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Role Session name</td> <td> <p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duration Seconds</td> <td> <p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	Description	Role Session name	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>	Duration Seconds	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p>
Field	Description						
Role Session name	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>						
Duration Seconds	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p>						

Field	Description	
	Field	Description
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)
	External Id	External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.
	Source Identity	The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.
	Session Tags	<p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>
Service Region*	<p>Service regions are regions that are supported by the selected service.</p> <p>To select a service region:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. To fetch the service regions for the account information provided, click Fetch Region. The retrieved service regions are populated in the Select the Region(s) dropdown list. b. From the Select the Region(s) dropdown list, select the required service region. 	
CA Operation Mode*	From the following options, select one/both operation mode(s) for discovering all the certificates enrolled by the Private Certificate Authority:	

Field	Description						
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ACM Private CA • AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) 						
<p>S3 Bucket*</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when the ACM Private CA operation mode is selected. </div> <p>Enter the S3 bucket name.</p>						
<p>Role ARN for S3 Bucket</p>	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when the ACM Private CA operation mode is selected for a Cross or Federated account. </div> <p>a. Click .</p> <p>The ARN Advanced Settings action pane is displayed.</p> <p>b. In the ARN Advanced Settings action pane, enter the following details:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> <p>Role Session name*</p> </td> <td> <p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td> <p>Duration Seconds</p> </td> <td> <p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	Description	<p>Role Session name*</p>	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>	<p>Duration Seconds</p>	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>
Field	Description						
<p>Role Session name*</p>	<p>Role Session name is an identifier for the assumed role session.</p> <p>Use the Role Session name to uniquely identify a session when the same rule is assumed by different principals or for different reasons.</p>						
<p>Duration Seconds</p>	<p>Enter the duration, in seconds, for which the credentials should remain valid.</p> <p>Acceptable durations for IAM user sessions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum: 900 seconds (15 minutes) • Maximum: 129,600 seconds (36 hours) <p>Default: 3600 seconds (1 hour)</p>						

Field	Description									
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>External Id</td> <td>External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Source Identity</td> <td>The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Session Tags</td> <td> <p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Field	Description	External Id	External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.	Source Identity	The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.	Session Tags	<p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>	
Field	Description									
External Id	External Id is a unique identifier that might be required when you assume a role in another account.									
Source Identity	The source identity is specified by the principal that is calling the AssumeRole operation.									
Session Tags	<p>Session Tags are key-value pairs that you pass when you assume an IAM role or federate a user in AWS STS.</p> <p>To create a session tag:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. In the Enter Key field, enter a key for the key-value pair. ii. In the Enter Value field, enter a value for the key-value pair. iii. Click Add. <p>The added key-value pair is shown in the table below the fields.</p>									
Discover Certificate	To enable instant certificate discovery at the time of device addition, select this checkbox.									
CA Sync*	<p>Select from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managed: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory. Users with the relevant permissions can then perform the required certificate-related actions. • Monitored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account and discover certificates. These certificates will be added to the inventory where the users will be allowed to only view the certificates. • Ignored: AppViewX will connect with the customer's AWS account but certificate discovery will be disabled. 									

Field	Description
Auto Sync	<p>To enable/disable automatic synchronization, use the Auto Sync key.</p> <p>If Auto Sync is enabled, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the first dropdown list, select the interval between two schedule-based syncs. From the second dropdown, select a unit for the interval (Hours/Days). <p>For example, to set the frequency of the schedule-based sync to every 2 hours, from the first dropdown list, select 2 and from the second dropdown list, select Hours.</p>
*: Mandatory fields	

8. Click **Fetch issuer and save**.

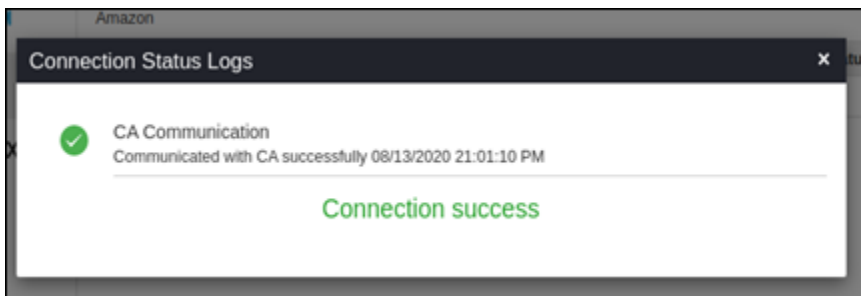
- AppViewX will now discover all the Private CA Certificate Authorities across the selected region(s).
- The inventory grid on the Amazon CA home page will be populated with the properties and details retrieved from this discovery.

Validating Amazon

Once the Amazon settings are added, you need to validate the connection between AppViewX and Amazon, to make sure that the connection is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. On the **Amazon** home page, select **Amazon** or **Amazon Private CA**.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

This action validates the CA communication and the **connection status** is displayed as either **Connection success** or **Failure**.



Segito CA

- [Configuring Segito](#)
- [Validating Segito Connection](#)

Configuring Segito

To configure the Segito CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Segito** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:



General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Segito CA APIs for Certificate Management:

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Segito CA instance. For example, <https://www.segito.com>

Name	Description
	 Note: vendorSpecificSettings.url - invalid URL.
* Credential Type	Select the type of credential as desired from the dropdown list. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual EntryCredential • List - CyberArk.
* Credential List	Select the required credential from the dropdown list.  Note: This field will be enabled if the Credential Type is selected as Credential List - CyberArk.
Account ID	Account id details of Segito CA Account.
* API Key	API key specific to the CA account. This API key should have required permission to make API Calls. Space is not allowed.
Auto Approve	Enable the Auto Approve option if all CLM requests from AppViewX do not need to be approved from Segito CA Account.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the Segito CA account will be fetched.

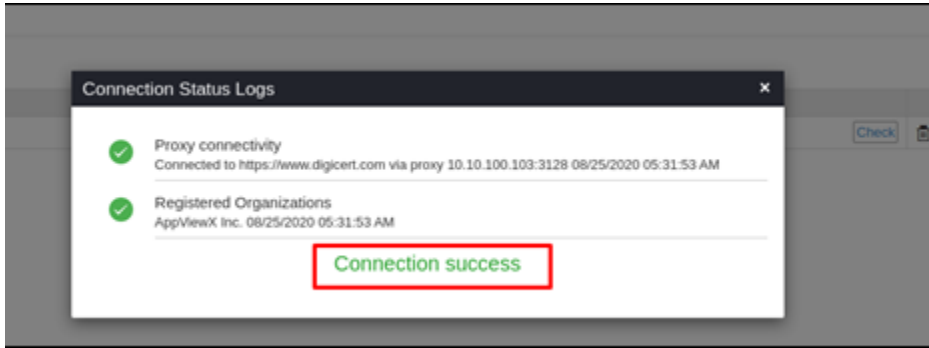
7. Click **Save**.

Validating Segito Connection

Once the Segito settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Segito is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Segito** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



DigiCert CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring DigiCert](#)
- [Validating DigiCert Connection](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring DigiCert CA account in AppViewX:

- A DigiCert CertCentral Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- **API Key** configured in DigiCert with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure a proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>

Configuring DigiCert

To configure the DigiCert CA:



1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the DigiCert CA APIs for Certificate Management:

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the DigiCert CA instance. For example, <https://www.digicert.com>  Note: vendorSpecificSettings.url - invalid URL.
*Credential Type	Select the type of credential as desired from the dropdown list. The available options are, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manual EntryCredential • List - CyberArk.
*Credential List	Select the required credential from the dropdown list.  Note: This field will be enabled if the Credential Type is selected as Credential List - CyberArk.

Name	Description
Account ID	Account id details of DigiCert CA Account, which can be found under account manager details in DigiCert CertCentral Account.
*API Key	API key specific to the CA account. This API key should have required permission to make API Calls. Space is not allowed.
Auto Approve	Enable the Auto Approve option if all CLM requests from AppViewX do not need to be approved from DigiCert CA Account.
 Note: Note: Auto approval checkbox is optional and features work only for one-step certificate requests configured in the DigiCert Cert Central Account.	
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the DigiCert CA account will be fetched.

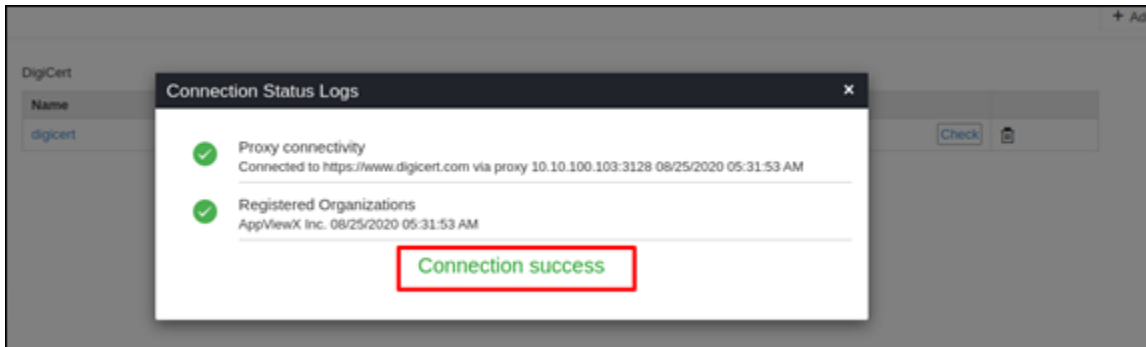
7. Click **Save**.

Validating DigiCert Connection

Once the DigiCert settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and DigiCert is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



DigiCert MPKI

The following are the prerequisites for configuring a DigiCert MPKI CA account in AppViewX:

- A DigiCert MPKI Account with **Administrator** role Access.
- An **API Key** configured in DigiCert MPKI with required permissions to make API Requests from AppViewX.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- [Configuring DigiCert MPKI CA](#)
- [Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection](#)

Configuring DigiCert MPKI CA

To configure the DigiCert MPKI CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **DigiCert MPKI** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.


General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Name	Description
	No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the DigiCert CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Validation
*Base URL	
*Seat ID	NA.
*API Key	
<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #E6F2FF;">  Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> *: <i>Mandatory fields</i> Auto approval checkbox is optional and features work only for one-step certificate requests configured in the DigiCert Cert Central Account. </div>	

6. Select **Fetch Divisions and Certificate Types**.

The Division and Certificate types available in the DigiCert CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific API key user in the table as shown below.

	End Entity Profile Names	Custom Attributes	Required	Default Value	Modifiable	Regex Pattern
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Code_Signing	country	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		locality	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		common_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		state	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		postal_code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Client	common_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		otherNameUPN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		san_ipAddress	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		mail_email	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		directory_name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ecosystem_Server	common_name	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		cert_org_unit	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		custom_encode_dnsName	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		custom_encode_dnsName_multi	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
		san_ipAddress	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>

7. Click **Save**.

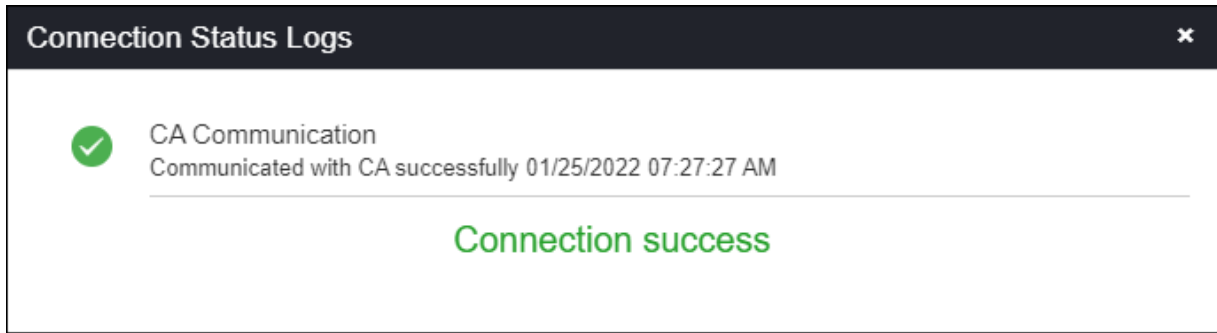


Note: The pop-up message is displayed as <CA_name> Settings Added.

Validating DigiCert MPKI Connection

Once the DigiCert MPKI settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and DigiCert MPKI is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **DigiCert** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.



The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

EJBCA CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring EJBCA](#)
- [Validating EJBCA](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring EJBCA account in AppViewX:

- An EJBCA client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other CLM operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.

Configuring EJBCA

To configure the EJBCA CA:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **EJBCA** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


General Information - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/ Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*Client Authentication	Client authentication certificate for API communication. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the valid password once the Authentication Details window is displayed. Click OK. Note: Must be a valid <i><.p12></i> or <i><.pfx></i> file.
*URL	EJBCA URL
*Discover by expiry days	To get all the certificates that are expired and valid for specified days. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Must be a number. </div>
End entity profile names	Required end entity profiles for CA setting.
Custom attributes	Required custom attributes for the specific end entity profile.


Options	Description
	 Note: Validation can be added by the user in the regex box.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Validate and Fetch**.

The **End entity profiles** available for the CA account will be fetched along with the certificate profile from the **Certificate Authority**.

7. Update the following details in the **Certificate Attributes** section as described in the table:

Certificate Attributes Section - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
* End Entry Profile Names	Select the profile that is used in the certificate enrollment from the dropdown list.
Custom Attributes	Select the list attributes configured in CA to enroll certificates.
 Note: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> *: <i>Mandatory fields</i> Custom attributes should be configured as exactly as it is available in the EJBCA portal. 	

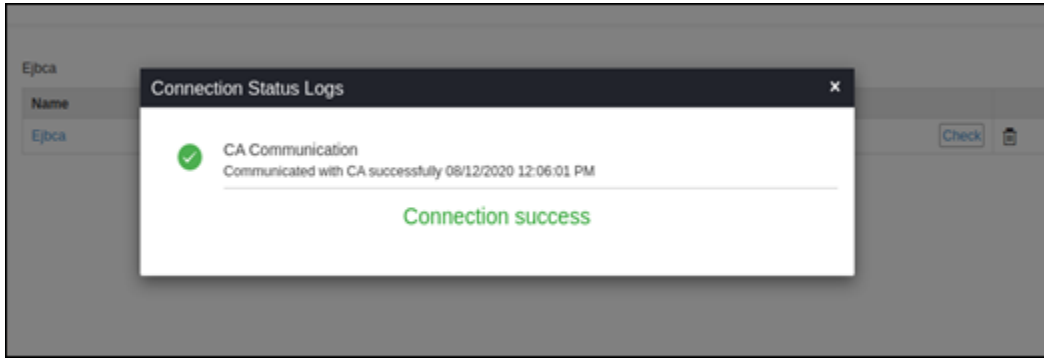
8. Click **Save**.

Validating EJBCA

Once the EJBCA settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and EJBCA is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **EJBCA** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Entrust

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust](#)
- [Validating Entrust CA](#)

Before You Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Entrust CA account in AppViewX:

- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials having necessary access for CLM actions.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check [Proxy Setup](#) for the steps to configure the proxy.

Configuring Entrust

To configure the Entrust CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Name	Description
	Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Client Authentication	The client authentication certificate from Entrust for API communication. Note: Must be a valid <.p12> file. To generate an CSR within AppViewX refer to Generating a CSR and download the CSR. Further, upload the CSR to the Entrust homepage as described in section - XXXXX.
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. The value is https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2
User Name	Enter the API Username to communicate with the CA.

Name	Description
Password	Enter the API Password to communicate with the CA.
Auto Approve	Select the checkbox to avoid queuing of new certificates in the CA portal.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **Advanced Settings** section as described in the table.

Advanced Settings - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
Poll after CSR Submission	A check box field when selected will fetch the certificated immediately after CSR Submission on enrollment, renew, and reissue of certificate with the retry count and retry frequency as described below.
*Retry Count	The number of times the polling will take place after CSR submission. Enter a value between 1 and 10.
*Retry Frequency	The duration of the polling. enter the value between 1 and 30seconds
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

7. Click **Fetch Custom Attributes**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

8. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust configuration settings will be added.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

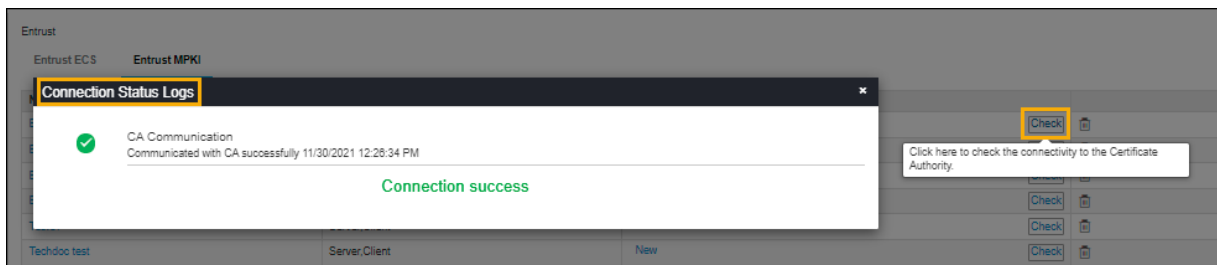
Validating Entrust CA

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

To validate the Entrust connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Entrust MPKI

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Entrust MPKI](#)
- [Validating Entrust MPKI Connection](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Entrust MPKI CA account in AppViewX:

- An Entrust client authentication certificate and credentials having necessary access for CLM actions.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check [Proxy Setup](#) for the steps to configure the proxy.

Configuring Entrust MPKI

To configure the Entrust MPKI CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Entrust** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **Entrust MPKI** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Entrust MPKI CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Client Authentication	Client authentication certificate for API communication. Note: Must be a valid <.p12> file.

Name	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the Entrust CA instance. For example, https://api.entrust.net/enterprise/v2
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Fetch CA and Profile Names**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

7. Click **Save**.

The created Entrust MPKI configuration settings will be added.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

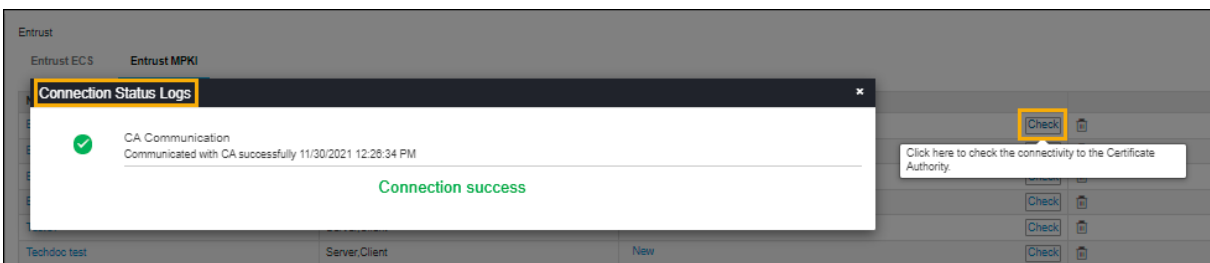
Validating Entrust MPKI Connection

Once the Entrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Entrust is properly configured.

To validate the Entrust MPKI connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Entrust MPKI** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



GlobalSign MSSL CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign MSSL CA](#)
- [Validating GlobalSign MSSL](#)
- [Limitations](#)

Configuring GlobalSign MSSL CA

To configure the GlobalSign MSSL CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **GlobalSign MSSL** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.:

CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*SSL URL	Base URL of the SSL API

Options	Description
* User Name	Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.
* Password	Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Once all the details are configured, click **Save**.
- In GlobalSign MSSL, we can now fetch profiles and domains by clicking on the **Fetch Profiles and Domain** button.

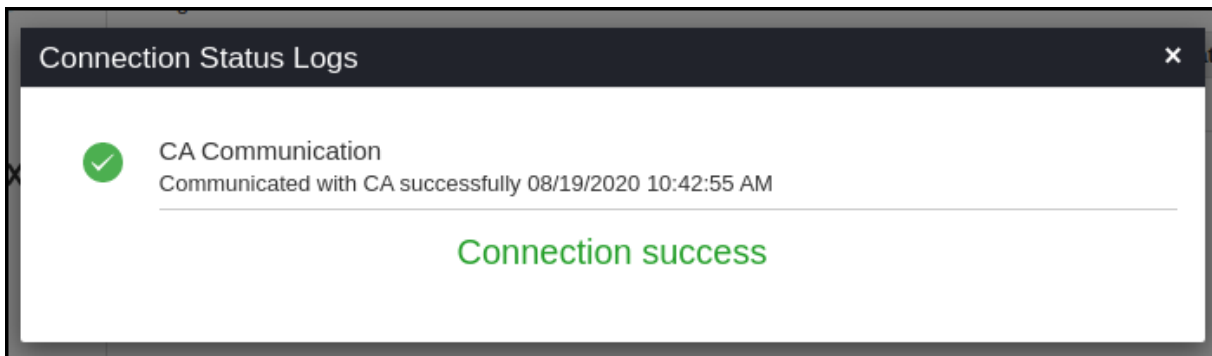


Note: The supported CSR key types are RSA 2048-8192, ECC P-256, ECC P-384 .

Validating GlobalSign MSSL

Once the GlobalSign settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign is properly configured.

- Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
- Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **GlobalSign MSSL** tab.
- Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
- CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



Limitations

Case/ Ticket number	Fix Description
CA Setting Update	<p>Users need to click on the Cancel button once the MSSL domain/profile. ID details are fetched from the GlobalSign MSSL account.</p> <p>If the user clicks the Update button, MSSL domain/profile ID details will be removed from the associated policy. The steps to follow to update CA settings are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the GlobalSign MSSL CA settings page, after adding/editing values, click the Update button. 2. Navigate back to updated CA settings and click the Fetch Profiles and Domain button. 3. Click the Cancel button instead of Update to bypass the existing issue.
Default CA policy mapping	<p>The default CA policy is defined with all available values selected and validity data is mapped based on commonly used validity. Hence, it will not have values equivalent to API documents or CA portals. This can be modified or updated in the application accordingly to the default CA policy if changes are required.</p>
Email Address	<p>The email address provided in the email address field on the enrollment page is not considered as the primary email value during CLM actions, instead, the email address field defined in the contact information of the logged-in user will be used. The help info message besides the Email address field on enroll/edit page is as – “If the user email address is configured, that will be used for GlobalSign CA approval actions. If the user email is not configured, then the email address provided in this field will be used” - the second part is not valid anymore.</p>

GlobalSign Atlas CA

- [Configuring GlobalSign Atlas](#)
- [Validating GlobalSignAtlas](#)

Configuring GlobalSign Atlas

Before you Begin

The prerequisites for configuring GlobalSign Atlas CA are

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, API Key, API Secret Key.
- A client certificate provided by the GlobalSign Atlas team.

To configure the GlobalSign Atlas CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **GlobalSign Atlas** tab.
4. If creating a CA for the first time click **Configure Now** or click **+ Add** button on the top right.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*API Credential Friendly name	Enter the API Credentials Friendly name (which is the CA Account name that will be used for the CA Policy and Enrollment).
*Purpose/Usage	Select the purpose of the certificate that can be requested using this account. NOTE: Users can select <i>Server</i> , <i>Client</i> or both.
Proxy Required	Select the checkbox if communication to the Certificate Authority (CA) has to use the proxy details provided in the general settings
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center that will be used to establish the communication with the CA.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*Base URL	Enter the base URL required for constructing the API request.
*API Key	Enter the API key which is the unique identifier used to authenticate a user.

Field Name	Description
	NOTE: The API Key will be displayed as asterisks (*)
API Secret	Enter the API secret to communicate with the CA. NOTE: The API Secret will be displayed as asterisks ()
*Client Authentication	Upload the certificate for client authentication in the .p12 or .pfx format only. The uploaded file format is invalid. Please upload in PKCS12 (.p12 or .pfx) file format only.
*: Mandatory fields	

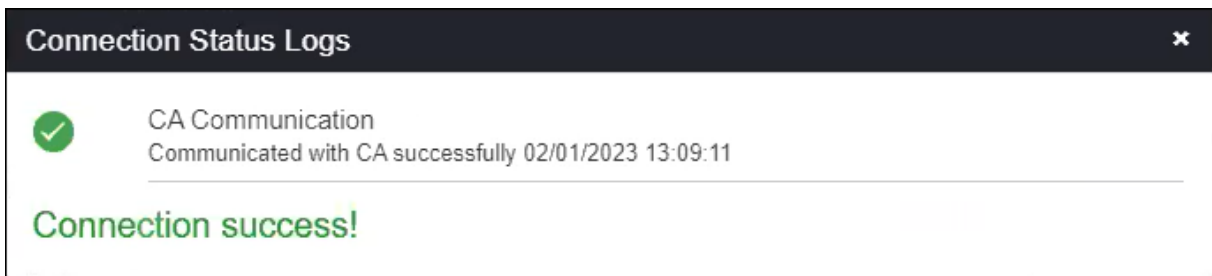
7. Click the **Fetch Validation Policy and Save** button.

A confirmation message will appear "Validation Policy fetched and settings have been updated." and the CA is created successfully. The connection status for the CA is displayed as New.

Validating GlobalSignAtlas

Once the GlobalSign Atlas settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GlobalSign is properly configured.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GlobalSign** in the left side vendor list, and then select the **GlobalSign Atlas** tab.
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



GoDaddy CA

- [Configuring GoDaddy](#)
- [Validating GoDaddy](#)
- [View GoDaddy Product Units](#)

Configuring GoDaddy

To configure the GoDaddy CA:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example: Server, Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the GoDaddy CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Base URL	This URL will contain the Base URL of the GoDaddy CA API instance. For example: https://api.godaddy.com
*Customer Number	Each user will have a unique customer number which is used to obtain the certificates from the GoDaddy CA account.
*API Key	API key generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.
*API Secret	API Secret generated in the GoDaddy portal which is used for GoDaddy API communications.
First Name	First name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.
Last Name	Last name of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes.
Email Address	Email Id of the GoDaddy Account user's name as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes. Note: Valid email address.
Phone Number	Phone number of the GoDaddy Account user as provided in the portal to be used for certificate creation purposes. <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; background-color: #e6f2ff;"> Note: Phone numbers must contain a minimum of 7 and a maximum of 15 numeric values.</div>
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Click **Save**.

Validating GoDaddy

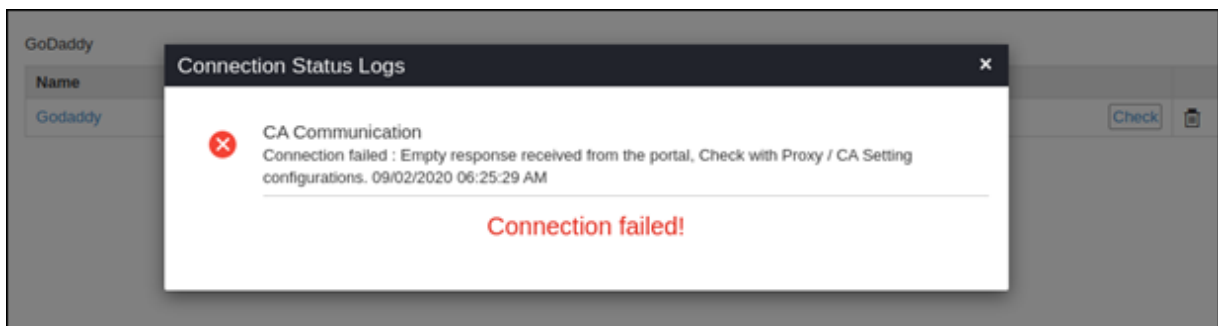
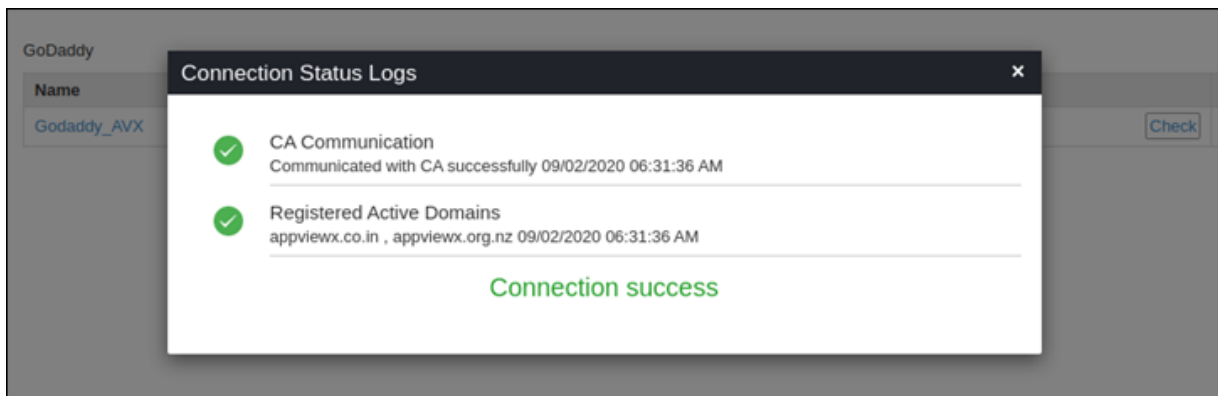
Once the GoDaddy settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and GoDaddy is properly configured. To validate GoDaddy CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



View GoDaddy Product Units

Each GoDaddy account will have different types of SSL products and units, below said steps would allow users to know the availability of the products and their remaining units.

To view the GoDaddy product units:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **GoDaddy** in the left side vendor list
3. On the **GoDaddy** page, click **View** to fetch the product types and the units available for the GoDaddy account configured. Once clicked, users can view the available and used product units.

Google CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Google](#)
- [Validating Google](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Google CA account in AppViewX:

- A Google client certificate or Google client authentication JSON for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and for other Certificate Lifecycle Management(CLM) operations.
- AppViewX servers should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- The URL <https://www.googleapis.com> should be reachable from AppViewX.


Configuring Google

To configure the Google CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list.
4. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
The Google configuration page is displayed.
5. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Name	Description
	 Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Configure it either Certificate Upload or JSON Upload. These fields are necessary for invoking the Google CA APIs via Certificate Upload for Certificate Management. Select the Certificate Upload check box,

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*Certificate and Key	Client authentication certificate for API communication.
*Email address	Email address of the user
*Project Id	ID of the project
*: Mandatory fields	

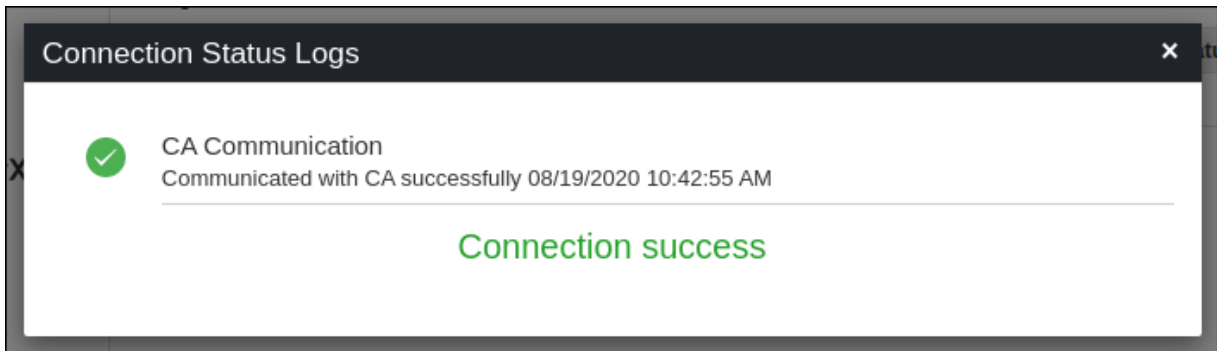
7. Select the JSON Upload check box and configure a CA. Click the Upload button to upload the JSON file.
8. Click Validate and Fetch. The issuer names available for the CA account will be fetched along with the validity of the issuers from the Certificate Authority.
9. Click **Save**.

Validating Google

Once the Google settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Google is properly configured. To validate the Google CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.

CA communication is validated and the Connection Status is shown as either Success or Failure.



Certificate Authority Service CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Certificate Authority Service](#)
- [Validating Certificate Authority Service](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Google CA account in AppViewX:


- A Google client certificate or Google client authentication JSON for a user having necessary access for enrolling the certificates and for other Certificate Lifecycle Management (CLM) operations.
- AppViewX servers should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings.
- The URL <https://www.googleapis.com> should be reachable from AppViewX.

Configuring Certificate Authority Service

To configure the Certificate Authority Service CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
The Google configuration page is displayed.
3. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. <div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; border-radius: 10px; padding: 5px; background-color: #e6f2ff;">  Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters. </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions are enabled. For example, Server and Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

4. Configure it either Certificate Upload or JSON Upload. These fields are necessary for invoking the Google CA APIs via Certificate Upload for Certificate Management. Select the Certificate Upload check box,
Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*Certificate and Key	Client authentication certificate for API communication.
*Email address	Email address of the user
*Project Id	ID of the project
<i>*: Mandatory fields</i>	

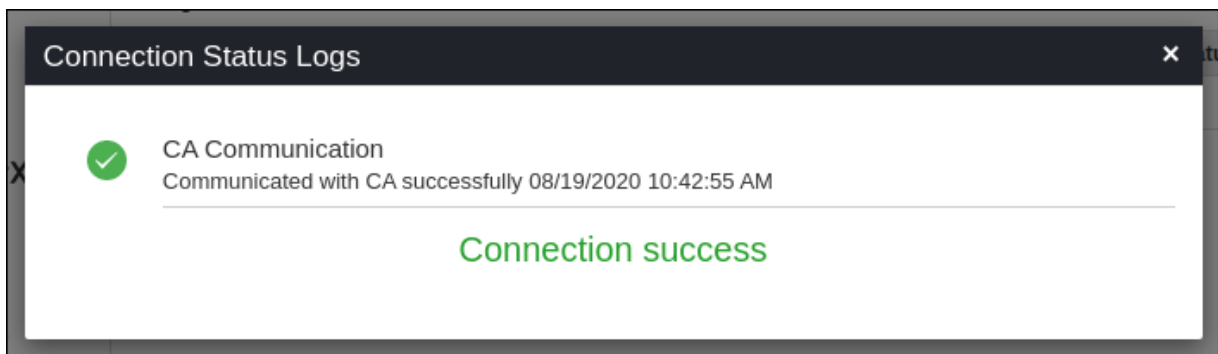
5. Select the JSON Upload check box and configure a CA. Click the Upload button to upload the JSON file.

6. Click **Validate and Fetch**. The issuer names available for the CA account will be fetched along with the validity of the issuers from the Certificate Authority.
7. Click **Save**.

Validating Certificate Authority Service

Once the Google settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Google is properly configured. To validate the Google CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Google** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



HashiCorp Vault CA

- [Before You Begin](#)
- [Configuring HashiCorp Vault](#)
- [Validating HashiCorp Vault](#)

Before You Begin

The prerequisites for configuring HashiCorp Vault CA are

- Login and password to access AppViewX.
- Base URL, Role ID, and Secret Key for the APP ROLE method and Base URL, Access Key, Secret Key, and Role Name for the AWS method in the CA Configurations.

Configuring HashiCorp Vault

Steps to Configure HashiCorp Vault CA

To configure HashiCorp Vault CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **HashiCorp Vault** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the details in the General Information section as described in the table below:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. NOTE: No special characters other than '.', '-', and '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters
*Purpose/Usage	The dropdown contains checkboxes for the certificate type for which the CLM actions will be enabled. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server, • Client • Code Signing One or more values can be selected depending on the type of account users need to create.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.

Field Name	Description
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the tables below. These fields are necessary for invoking the HashiCorp CA Secret Engine for Certificate Management. The fields displayed in the CA Configuration section depend on the value selected in the **Method** field. The two auth method values are:

- **APP ROLE** - The APP ROLE auth method allows machines or apps to authenticate with Vault-defined roles. An "AppRole" represents a set of Vault policies and login constraints that must be met to receive a token with those policies. An AppRole can be created for a particular machine, or even a particular user on that machine or a service spread across machines. The credentials required for successful login depend upon the constraints set on the AppRole associated with the credentials.
- **AWS** - The AWS auth method provides an automated mechanism to retrieve a Vault token for IAM principals and AWS EC2 instances. Unlike most Vault auth methods, this method does not require manual first-deploying or provisioning of security-sensitive credentials (tokens, username/password, client certificates, etc), by operators under many circumstances.

CA Configuration for App Role - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
* Base URL	The base of URL of the CA account. This is a user input value.
* Method	APP ROLE
* Role ID	User input value RoleID is an identifier that selects the AppRole against which the other credentials are evaluated. When authenticating against this auth method's login endpoint, the RoleID is a required argument at all times. By default, RoleIDs are unique UUIDs, which allow them to serve as secondary secrets to the other credential information.
* Secret Key	User input value

Field Name	Description
	Secret Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. They can be created against an AppRole either via generation of a 128-bit purely random UUID by the role itself or via specific, custom values. Similarly to tokens, Secret keys have properties like usage-limit, TTLs and expirations.
*: Mandatory fields	

CA Configuration for AWS - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Description
*Base URL	The base of URL of the CA account. This is a user input value.
*Method	AWS
*Access Key	User input value Access Keys are used to sign the requests that are sent. Access Key and Secret Key are used for programmatic (API) access to AWS services.
*Secret Key	User input value Secret Key (SecretID) is a credential that is required by default for any login and is intended to always be secret. Similar to tokens, SecretIDs have properties like usage-limit, TTLs, and expirations.
*Role Name	User input value The basic mechanism of operation (AWS authorization workflow) is per-role. Roles are registered in the method and associated with a specific authentication type that cannot be changed once the role has been created. Roles can also be associated with various optional

Field Name	Description
	restrictions, such as the set of allowed policies and max TTLs on the generated tokens.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

The correct values entered in the fields establish a connection with the HashiCorp vault to be able to fetch the secret engine.

- Click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.

A list of PKI secret engines is displayed. These will be presented to users in the policy. from where they can select the respective secret engines.

- Click **Save**.

The Account details are displayed in a grid at the bottom of the screen, with options to options to edit, check (connection status), and delete.

Editing an Account

- Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.

The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.

- Click the account name from the 'Name' column in the grid.

The General Information and CA Configuration sections are displayed with pre-populated values.

- Change any of the editable fields and click the **Fetch Secret Engine** button.
- Click the **Update** button.

Deleting an Account

- Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.

The list of Accounts is displayed in the grid.

- In the last column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **delete** or bin icon.

The Delete Confirmation pop-up is displayed.

- Click **Yes**.

Validating HashiCorp Vault

To check the connection status of an account,

- Go to **Start > Certificate**, and under Advanced Configuration, click **Create a Certificate Authority**.

The list of Accounts are displayed in the grid.

- In the Status column of the grid with the listed accounts, click the **Check** button

The Success or Failure value is displayed.

3. Update the account details accordingly to get a “success” status.

InCommon CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring InCommon CA](#)
- [Validating InCommon CA](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring InCommon CA account in AppViewX:

- InCommon Certificate Manager credentials having necessary access for enrolling the certificates.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the **proxy**. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Username and Password as set up in the Certificate Manager tool.
- An OrgID as provided by InCommon Certificate Manager.
- The login URL and URI.


Configuring InCommon CA

To configure the InCommon CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:


General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.


Name	Description
	 Note: No special characters other than ‘:’, ‘-’, ‘_’ are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.
*Purpose/ Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server, Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the InCommon CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Base URL	<p>This URL will contain just the hostname of the InCommon CA instance. For example, <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl">https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl- here base URL is https://cert-manager.com.</p>  Note: No special characters other than ‘:’, ‘-’, ‘_’ are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.
*Login URL	<p>URI specific to the InCommon CA Customer Account. For example, <a href="https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl">https://cert-manager.com/customer/<<customer_uri>>/ssl- here URI is customer_uri.</p>

Name	Description
*User Name	User name for the account created with InCommon CA.
*Password	Password for the account created with InCommon CA.
*Organization ID	InCommon supports organization hierarchy. Id of the Organization Unit/Department in which Certificates need to be managed has to be specified here. CLM actions done using this CA account will be specific to this particular organization's id/department.

 **Note:**

- *: *Mandatory fields*
- If the certificates from multiple organization's units/departments need to be managed, then a separate CA has to be configured for each organization unit/department in the InCommon CA setting page.

6. Select **Fetch Certificate Types**.

The Certificate types available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority.

7. Click **Save**.

Validating InCommon CA

Once the InCommon settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and InCommon is properly configured. To validate the InCommon CA,

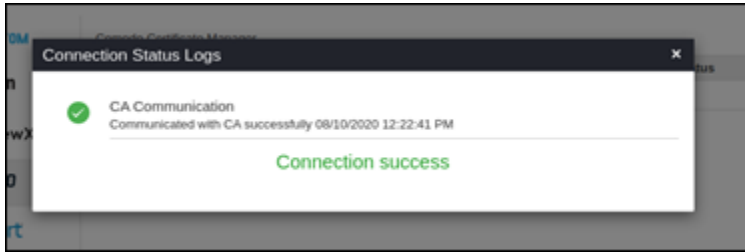
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**

2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list

The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.

3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Let's Encrypt CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Let's Encrypt CA](#)
- [Validating Let's Encrypt](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Let's Encrypt CA account in AppViewX:

- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Any one of the following Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL as per requirement :
 1. <https://acme-staging-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **staging**.
 2. <https://acme-v02.api.letsencrypt.org> for **production**.


Configuring Let's Encrypt CA

To configure the Let's Encrypt CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Let's Encrypt** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Name	A unique name to identify the CA setting.

Name	Description
	 Note: No special characters other than '!', '@', '_', are allowed. The name must not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	The certificate types will be managed by these settings. For now, Let's Encrypt is having only one purpose Server .
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Let's Encrypt CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Base URL	Let's Encrypt certificate enrolment URL either staging or production based on the requirement.
*Email ID(s)	Enter email ID(s) in this field to receive notifications from Let's Encrypt. Multiple email ID must be separated by comma (,).
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Save**.

Validating Let's Encrypt

Once the Let's Encrypt settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Let's Encrypt is properly configured. To validate the Let's Encrypt CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created. The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

Microsoft Enterprise CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA](#)
- [Validating Microsoft Enterprise](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA in AppViewX

AppViewX Windows Gateway installer should be installed in a windows machine, running and reachable from AppViewX vendor plugin(s) through the Communication Modes described below.

Communication Mode Table

Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
NATIVE API	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission		Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users Enroll permission at Certificate template level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC service	RPC service certutil.exe command availability

Communication Mode Table (continued)

Communication mode	Category	Windows gateway machine	Microsoft CA
	Ports		135 as the incoming port
POWERSHELL	User account type	Service account	Service account.
	User permission		Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability	RPC Service, WinRM Service, WinRM Configuration, Powershell remoting, certutil.exe command availability.
	Ports		5985
WMI	User account type	Service account	Service account
	User permission		Full control permission to C:\Windows\Temp Read, Request certificates, Issue and Manage certificates permission at CA level for the service account or the service account group or authenticated users
	Services	WMI service certutil.exe command availability	WMI service certutil.exe command availability
	Ports	NA.	135, 445 or 139

Configuring Microsoft Enterprise CA

To configure the Microsoft enterprise CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Microsoft** in the left side vendor list, and then click the **Enterprise** tab.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. Example. Server, Client, Code Signing
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Windows Gateway URL	Enter the URL where the AppViewX agent is running.
*Windows Gateway Type	The mode of communication types from Windows Gateway machine to CA machine. Available types are NATIVE API, POWERSHELL, WMI . Refer Communication Mode

Name	Description
Client Authentication Certificate	The client certificate used while installing Windows Gateway. Users can use the default client certificate (ClientCertificateGateway.pfx) or the custom certificate given by the Customer.
*Credential Type	Type of credential to be used. Either Manual Entry or Credential List .
Username	User name of the credentials.
Password	Password for the username.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

- Click **Fetch CA Names** to retrieve CAs accessible from Windows Gateway installed machine.
Upon successful completion of Fetch CA Names, all reachable CAs listed in **Select CA**.
- Click on one specific CA and proceed.

Dynamic Fields for the Select CA Section

Name	Description
Select CA	All the reachable CAs are listed here.
*CA Machine Hostname	Host name of the CA Machine will be auto-filled.
*CA Name	Name of the CA chosen which will be auto-filled.
CA Manager Approval	Approves the pending enroll / Renew request submitted from AppViewX Certificate.
*Time Zone	To perform scheduled and Optimized CA discovery, please provide time zone value.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

Using Native API

Using Powershell and WMI

- Configure the **Template Details**.
Once CA is selected from the **Select CA** list, the **Template** details should have auto-filled.



Note: If the desired template is not listed, it might not be published in AD. Users can add it manually through MS Template name and OID fields.

2. In the Template Details section, select/enter the details.
3. Click **Save**.

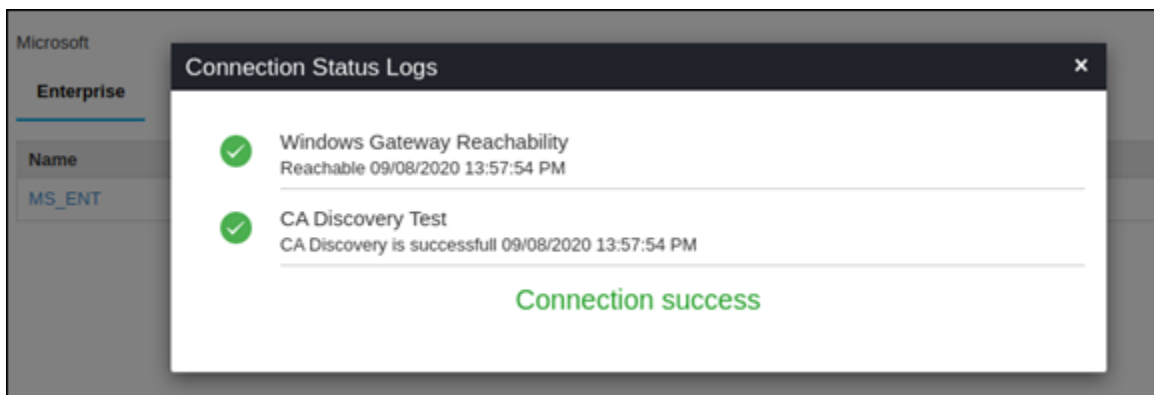
Validating Microsoft Enterprise

Once the Microsoft Enterprise settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Microsoft Enterprise is properly configured. To validate the Microsoft enterprise CA,

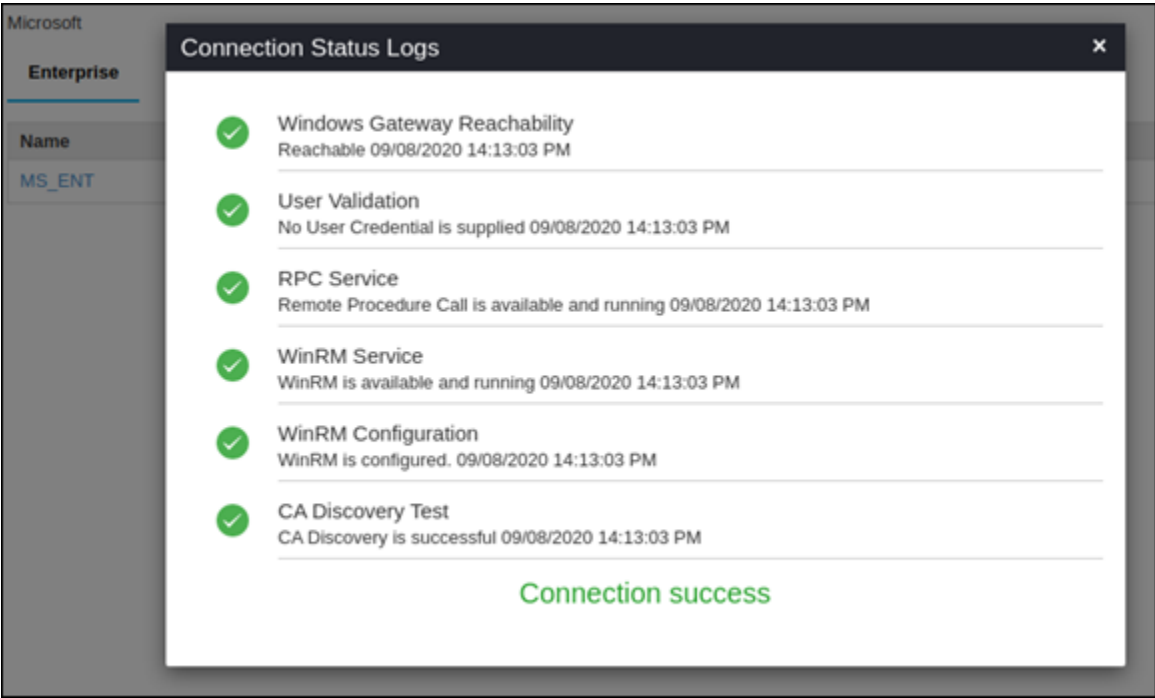
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **InCommon** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

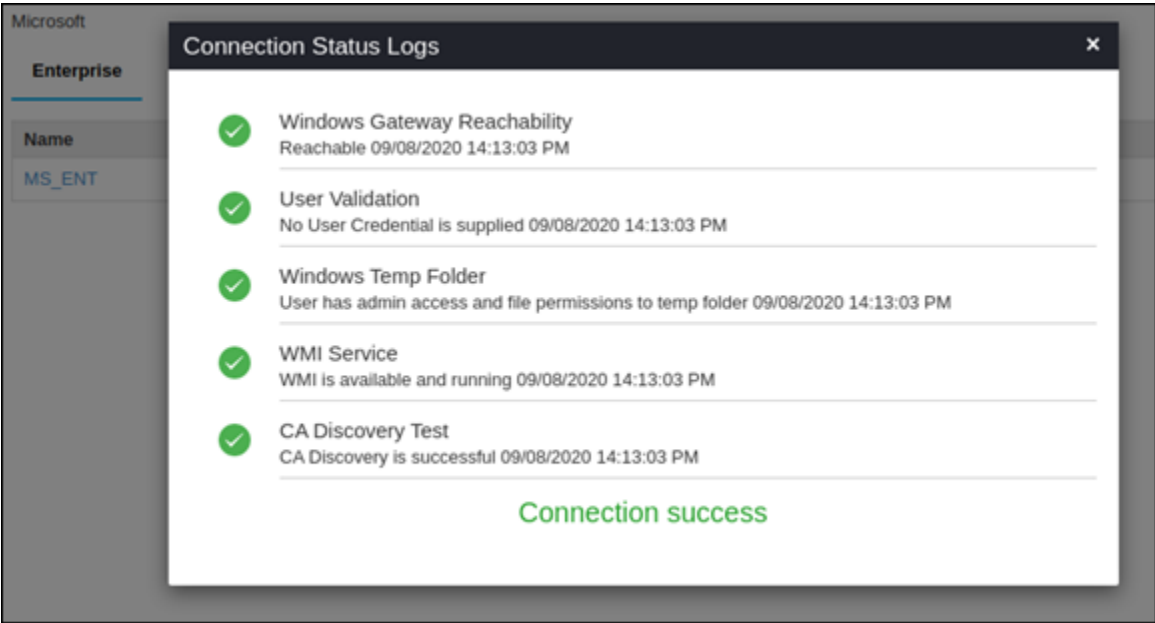
Success Message.



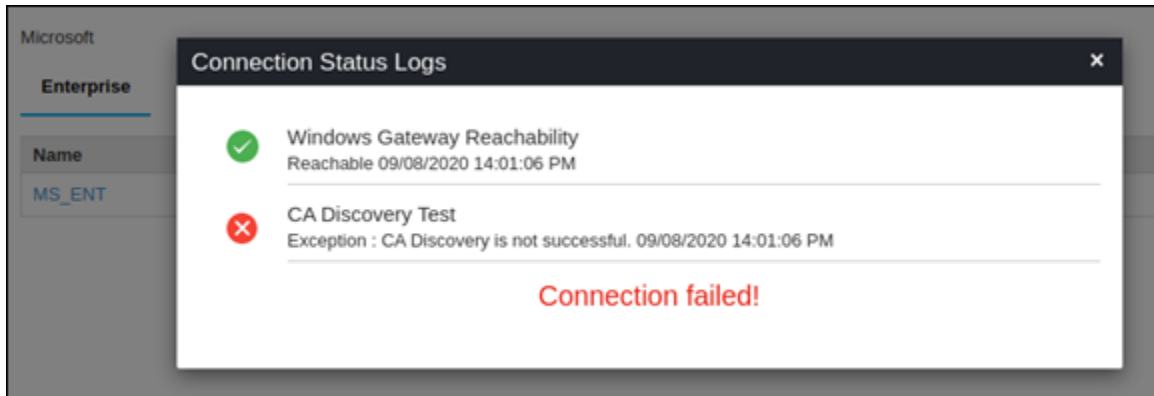
Success Scenario for Native API



Success Scenario for Powershell



Success scenario for WMI



Nexus

- [Prerequisites for Nexus](#)
- [Configuring Nexus CA](#)
- [Validating Nexus](#)

Prerequisites for Nexus

The following are the prerequisites for configuring a Nexus CA account in AppViewX:

- A Nexus Account with Administrator role Access.
- Before discovery or enrollment, the customer must upload the CA certificates manually.
- The AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy.

Configuring Nexus CA

To configure the Nexus CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Nexus** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. The name should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, server and clients
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: Mandatory fields	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table.

CA Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Options	Description
*SSL URL	Base URL of the SSL API
*User Name	Provide a username of the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*Password	Provide a password for the GCC to communicate with the CA.
*: Mandatory fields	

6. Select **Fetch Procedures**.



Note: The procedures available in the Nexus CA account will be fetched and listed for the specific user.

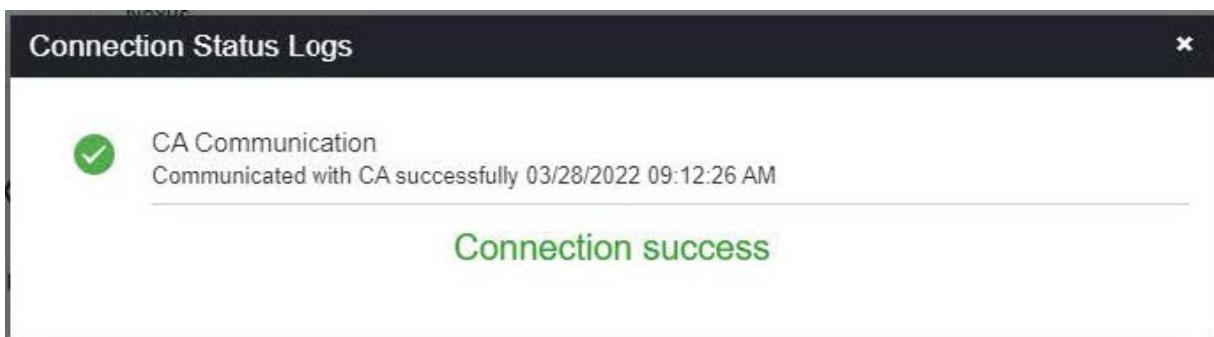
7. To map the fetched procedures, click on one or many and click the **Actions** dropdown:

- a. **CASE 1** - If the user selects Server only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Server.** and **MAP as Default**
 - b. **CASE 2** - If the user selects Client only in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will only have - **Map as Client.** and **MAP as Default**
 - c. **CASE 3** - If the user selects Server and Client both in Purpose and Usage, then the fetched procedure by default will be of server/client both. The Action dropdown will have both the actions **Map as Client , Map as Server,** and **MAP as Default**
8. Click **Save.**

Validating Nexus

Once the Nexus settings are added, the validation must be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Nexus is configured properly.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Nexus** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
4. The CA communication will be validated and the Connection Status will be shown as either Success or Failure.



OpenTrust CA

- [Configuring OpenTrust CA](#)
- [Validating OpenTrust Connection](#)

Configuring OpenTrust CA

To configure the OpenTrust CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **OpenTrust** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table:

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	A unique name to identify the CA setting. Note: No special characters other than '.', '-', '_' are allowed. Names should not start with special characters.
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example: Server and Client
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the OpenTrust CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
* Client Authentication	Client authentication certificate for API communication. Note: Must be a valid <.p12> file.
* Base URL	This URL will contain just the hostname of the OpenTrust CA instance. Eg - https://api.opentrust.net/enterprise/v2
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Fetch CA and Profile Names**.

The attributes available for the CA account will be fetched from the Certificate Authority along with the CA and profile names.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **CA and profiles fetched**.

7. Click **Save**.

The created OpenTrust configuration settings will be added.



Note: The pop-up message is displayed as **<CA_name> Settings Added**.

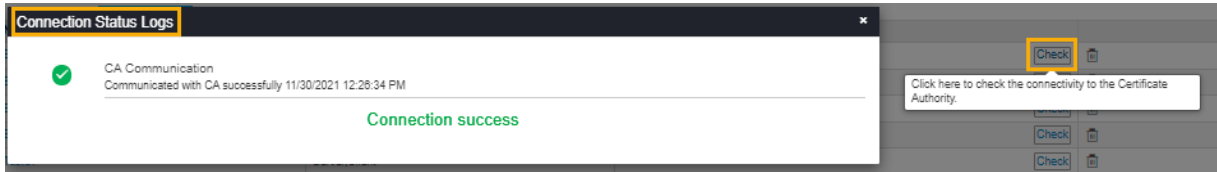
Validating OpenTrust Connection

Once the OpenTrust settings are added, validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and OpenTrust is properly configured.

To validate the OpenTrust connection,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **OpenTrust** in the left side vendor list.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Symantec CA

- [Before you begin](#)
- [Configuring Symantec CA](#)
- [Validating Symantec](#)

Before you begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring a Symantec account in AppViewX:


- A Symantec client certificate for a user having the necessary access for enrolling the certificates and other Certificate Lifecycle Management(CLM) operations.
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>
- Symantec users should be associated with the role “**w=VICE2 web services application**”.
- Required organization status should be “valid”.
- If the EV certificate type is enabled, then the EV status of the organization should be “Yes”.
- The required domain should be registered with the organization.
- The required certificate types should be enabled with the required values in the portal.
- Unit values should be available for the required certificate type.

Configuring Symantec CA

To configure the Symantec CA:


1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Symantec** in the left side vendor list.
4. Update the following details in the **General Information** section as described in the table.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*CA Account name	<p>A unique name to identify the CA setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: No special characters other than '!', '@', '_', are allowed. The name must not start with special characters. </div>
*Purpose/Usage	Certificate Type for which CLM actions will be enabled. For example, Server and Client.
Proxy Required	Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via Proxy. The proxy details configured in general settings will be used for communication.
Data Center (AppViewX's CA agent)	Select the data center through which the CA communication needs to happen.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

5. Update the following details in the **CA Configuration** section as described in the table. These fields are necessary for invoking the Symantec CA APIs for Certificate Management.

CA Configuration - Field and Description Table

Name	Description
*Certificate and Key	<p>Client authentication certificate for API communication.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: Must be a valid <.p12> or <.pfx> file. </div>
*URL	<p>Symantec URL used for API communications. For example, https://certmanager-webservices.websecurity.symantec.com/vswebservices/</p>

Name	Description
* Jurisdiction hash	Jurisdiction hash of the Symantec account. Available in the top right corner of the Symantec portal.
* First name	First name of the user.
* Last name	Last name of the user.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

6. Click **Save**.

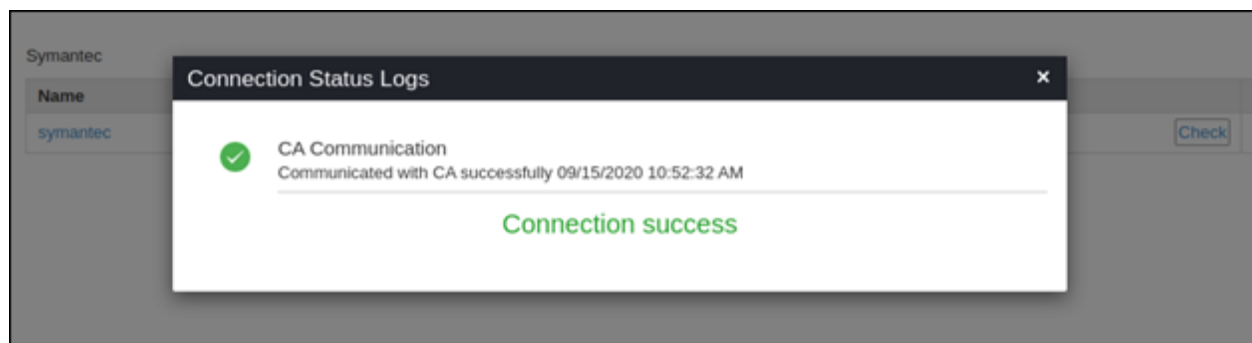
Validating Symantec

Once the Symantec settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Symantec is properly configured. To validate the Symantec CA,

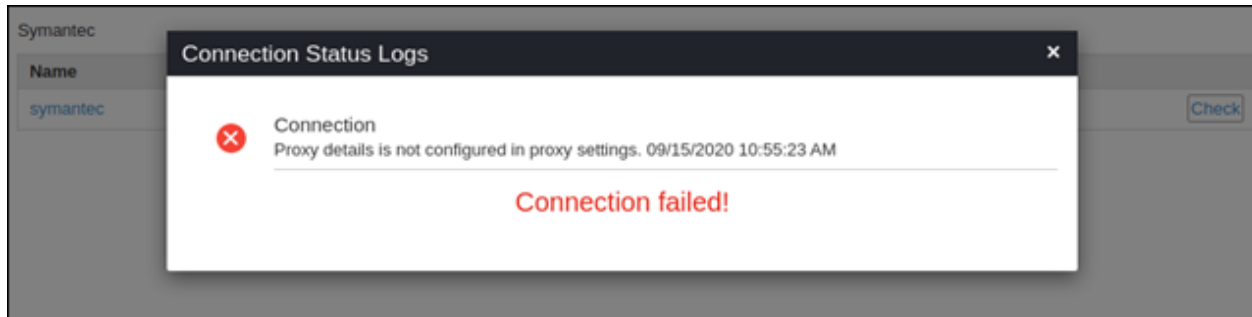
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Symantec** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that has been created.

The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.

Success Scenario



Failed Scenario



Trustwave CA

- [Before you Begin](#)
- [Configuring Trustwave CA](#)
- [Validating Trustwave](#)

Before you Begin

Following are the prerequisites for configuring Trustwave CA in AppViewX:

- Trustwave API URL. Ex: <https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/>
- Reachability from AppViewX southbound to Trustwave API URL via proxy or direct internet connection
- Valid credentials for communicating to Trustwave CA via API
- Reseller id
- Account details provided in Trustwave account such as Organization Name, Email address, Organization Address, City, State, Zip code, Country, Phone number
- AppViewX server should either have internet access or have a proxy configured in AppViewX general settings. Check Proxy Setup for the steps to configure the proxy. <https://adminguide.appviewx.com/proxy-4>

Configuring Trustwave CA

To configure the Trustwave CA,

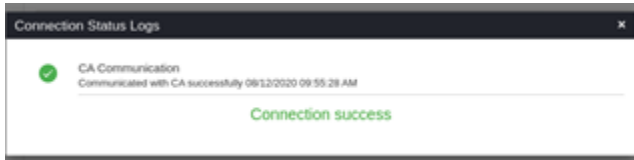
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**.
2. Click the **+Add** icon on the top right of the page.
3. Select the **Trustwave** in the left side vendor list.
4. Configure the **General Information** details as follows:

- a. **CA Account name** - Provide an account name for the CA setting.
 - b. **Purpose/Usage** - Choose the certificate categories that will be managed by this setting. Possible certificate categories could be:
 - i. Server
 - ii. Code Signing
 - c. **Proxy Required** - Enable this field if the CA communication needs to happen via **Proxy**.
 - d. Choose the appropriate **Data Center**.
5. Configure the **CA Configuration** with information you want to configure:
 - a. **API URL**: The Trustwave API URL to communicate. Ex: `https://testapi.ssl.trustwave.com/3.0/`
 - b. **Username**: The username for API authentication.
 - c. **Password**: The password for API authentication.
 - d. **Reseller ID**: The Reseller Id for the account.
 6. Configure the **Account Details** with information you want to configure:
 - a. **Name**: The Organization name given in the Trustwave account.
 - b. **Email Address**: The Administrator or organization email address given in the Trustwave account.
 - c. **Address**: The Organization Address given in the Trustwave account.
 - d. **City**: The city name given in the Trustwave account.
 - e. **State**: The state name given in the Trustwave account.
 - f. **Zip code**: The zip code given in the Trustwave account.
 - g. **Country**: The country code given in the Trustwave account. Ex: US.
 - h. **Phone number**: The phone number given in the Trustwave account.
 7. Click **Save**.

Validating Trustwave

Once the Trustwave settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the connection between AppViewX and Trustwave is properly configured. To validate the Trustwave CA,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Certificate Authority**
2. Select the **Trustwave** in the left side vendor list
The newly created and older settings are displayed in the grid.
3. Click **Check** to validate the CA setting that is created.
The CA communication will be validated and the **Connection Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



Groups

Before starting the configuration of Certificate Groups, it is important to be aware of the following key points:

- **Certificate Groups** are used to classify certificates based on different business units
- In certain organizations, **Certificate Groups** are used for assigning access permissions. Only privileged users, typically those inheriting permissions from the Resource > User Group, have the ability to view the corresponding **Certificate Groups**.
- Administrators should be assigned to a **Role** that grants them access to perform the following actions:
 - Create/ modify a group
 - Delete a group
 - Edit Default group
- [Creating a Group](#)
- [Modifying a Group](#)
- [Deleting a Group](#)

Creating a Group

Assign the user to a user group that (inherits from resource and role) enables them to access the certificate group.

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.



Note: KUBE+ is packaged with default certificate groups **Default** and **Certificate-Gateway** .

2. Click the **+ Create** button in the command bar to create a new group.
3. On the **Group : Create**, enter or select the required information.

Fields and Description for the Group Details Section

Name	Type	Mandatory	Description	Validation
Select Group Hierarchy	Select	Yes	Select the parent group to which the new group should be associated	NA
Group Name	Text	Yes	Enter a unique name for the new group	The name should not start with special characters and spaces. No special characters are allowed except('.', '-', '_') and name cannot end with space
Application ID	Text	No	Provide organization ID (if any) to associate with the new group	NA
Description	Text	No	Provide the purpose of the new group	NA

Fields and Description for the Other Details Section

Name	Type	Mandatory	Description	Validation
Contact Name	Text	No	Provide contact person to whom changes should be intimated	NA
Line of Business Name	Text	No	Provide the name of the business unit	NA
Email	Text	No	Provide contact mail address	NA
Environment Name	Text	No	Provide environment name	NA
Phone Number	Text	No	Provide a phone number for contact	NA
Inventory Number	Text	No	Provide inventory number	NA

Name	Type	Mandatory	Description	Validation
Cost Center/ Hierarchy	Text	No	Provide Cost Center code/ label	NA
Push Certificate Automatically	Check box	No	By enabling the check box, the renewed/ reissued certificates in this group are automatically associated with their device	NA
Renew Automatically	Toggle button	No	Turn On to automatically renew the certificate belongs to this group.	NA
Associated Policy	Dropdown (disabled)	Yes	Displays the policy associated with this group.	NA

4. Click **Create** to create the group.

Users can view the group only if it is associated with the **Resource** of their **User Group**. To associate the **Group** to a **Resource** click the **Create Group and Configure the Resources for User Access** button instead of **Create** button. This will create the group and go to **Resource**. Refer to Create a Resource section in the [Platform User guide](#) to configure user access.

5. The newly created **Group** is added to the Group inventory. Click the **Name** (Group name) to view the group details.

6. On the Certificate Count column, click on the count link of Server/Client/Device/Code Signing to view the certificates.




Note: After the certificate discovery, you can view the count of certificates (Server, Client, Device, and Code Signing) associated with this group.

Modifying a Group

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.
2. On the Group Inventory page, click the **Name** (Group name).
3. Modify required fields in the group and click **Update**. Field descriptions are available in [Create a Group](#) section.



Deleting a Group

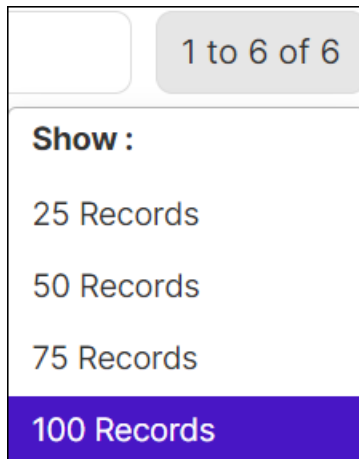
1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policy > Groups**.
2. On the group inventory page, select the check box against the group you want to delete.
3. Click  in the command bar.
4. On the confirmation pop-up , click **Yes** to proceed.

Cluster Policy

Cluster Policy enforces security prerequisites, standardizes certificate issuance, and ensures compliance, all while promoting secure certificate management practices throughout your clusters.

On the Cluster Inventory page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the **Show** popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.



The cluster policy inventory list includes the following information:

Column and Description table

Column Name	Description
Name	Unique policy name to be associated with one or more clusters. The special characters (-) and (_) are allowed. Maximum 255 characters are allowed.

Column and Description table (continued)

Column Name	Description
Type	Type of cluster policy.
Created By	User ID of the policy creator.
No. of Clusters	Count of clusters associated with the policy.
No. of Namespace	Count of namespaces associated.
Last Updated	Last updated Timestamp.

- [Creating a CA Policy](#)
- [Deleting a Cluster Policy](#)

Creating a CA Policy

Create Policy enables the Infosec teams / PKI administrators to create, define and enforce policies for one more cluster managed in the inventory.



Note: The certificate automations (creation, renewal, etc.) initiated from a specific cluster must adhere to the policy parameters outlined in this policy inventory. Any cluster that is not a part of or does not align with the Cluster Policy will be denied certificate automations.

Why is Cluster Policy Essential?

Cluster Policy is your toolbox of rules and guidelines that you set up to manage the safe issuance of SSL/TLS certificates within your Kubernetes cluster. AppViewX offers various ways to ensure that these policies are followed when certificates are issued.

- **CA Setting** - When your application management teams work within a specific namespace, they often need access to a private CA to request certificates for their unique domains. The CA Setting policy type takes care of configuring this private CA and manages how certificates are provided within this specific namespace.
- **CA Setting Cluster** - If your application teams are deploying across the entire cluster, no matter where their apps land, the CA Setting Cluster policy type steps in. It handles the configuration of the CA and ensures certificates are issued seamlessly, maintaining security and consistency throughout the cluster.


Prerequisites:


- Ensure [CA integration](#) is completed.
- Ensure you configured organization PKI standards as [CA Policy](#).
- Ensure the [Group](#) is created.

To create a cluster policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Groups & Policies > Cluster Policy**

On the **Cluster Policy** page, the created policies are displayed, if any.

 + Create Policy

2. Click .
3. On the Cluster Policy Information page, enter/select the policy information fields.

Cluster Policy - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Policy Name*	Enter a unique policy name to be associated with one or more clusters.
Type*	Select a type from dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CA Settings Cluster - cluster wide global policy. • CA Setting - Policy to be applied for a specific namespace or a project within a cluster.
Clusters*	Select preferred clusters from the dropdown list.
Certificate Group*	Select a certificate group from the dropdown list.
Associate CA Policy*	Select a CA policy from the dropdown list associated with certificate group.
Certificate Authority*	Select a Certificate Authority from the dropdown list.
CA Settings*	Select a CA Settings from the dropdown list.
*: <i>Mandatory fields</i>	

4. Click **Add**.

Deleting a Cluster Policy

You can delete cluster policies from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated cluster policy.

To delete a cluster policy:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > Cluster Policy**.
2. Select the designated cluster policy, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.

**Note:**

- You can delete a cluster policy created from the inventory if the Policy is not applied or consumed by any of the Issuer CAs created in the Issuer CA inventory.

Automate Certificate Lifecycle Management

- [Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management](#)
- [Issuer CA](#)
- [Secure Apps Inventory](#)

Steps for Automating Certificate Lifecycle Management

Request and provision certificates to your Kubernetes secrets or local volumes within a pod or a container and use them for securing your Kubernetes ingress or gateways. The provisioned certificates can also be automatically renewed before expiry.

The following outlines the step-by-step process to fully automate certificate lifecycle management within your clusters, ensuring compliance and promoting crypto-agility through simplified PKI policies.

1. Configure **Issuer CA** - Configure Certificate Authority Settings for your cluster and, if needed, fine-tune them to specific namespaces within the cluster to generate certificate signing requests
2. **Enroll Certificates** - The certificate request process involves obtaining certificates signed by the specified Certificate Authority (CA), which can then be deployed in Kubernetes secrets or pods.
3. **Download Certificates** - Process for retrieving certificates from the centralized inventory and deploying them to Kubernetes secrets or pods.

Issuer CA

In KUBE+, Issue CA refers to CA Settings, a Kubernetes resource that represents the configuration of certificate authorities (CAs) responsible for generating signed certificates through certificate signing requests.

The issuer CA inventory list includes the following information:

Issuer CA Inventory - Column Description Table

Column Name	Description
Name	Unique CA Settings name. Alpha numerals and special characters (-) and (_) are allowed.
Created By	User ID of the policy creator.
Cluster Name	Name of the cluster.
Cluster Policy	Name of the policy that has been associated for the cluster.
Last Updated	Last updated Timestamp.
State	State of the CA.
Status	Status of the CA.

- [Creating a CA Settings](#)
- [Deleting an Issuer CA](#)
- [Push and Revoke Issuer CA](#)

Creating a CA Settings

Create CA Setting enables the DevOps / CloudOps teams to create and configure CA Settings for their cluster based on the PKI policy defined for their clusters.

Prerequisites:


- Ensure [CA integration](#) is completed.
- Ensure you configured organization PKI standards as [CA Policy](#).
- Ensure the [Group](#) is created.
- Ensure [Cluster Policy](#) is created.

To create a CA Settings:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**

On the **Issuer CA** page, the created Issuer CAs are displayed, if any.

 + Create CA Settings

2. Click .
3. On the Create CA Settings page, enter/select the policy information fields in the General Information section.

CA Settings - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
CA Settings Name*	Enter a CA settings name.
Select Cluster*	Select a cluster which was onboarded (or) cluster where the cert-orchestrator is deployed and managed in the inventory.
Select Policy*	Select a required Cluster Policy associated with the cluster.
Group Name*	Select a Certificate Group and the respective CA Issuer associated with the Group.
Type*	Choose a specific CA Account and the specific profiles or attributes required to send the certificate signing requests to the Certificate Authority.

4. On the Create CA Settings page, enter/select the policy information fields in the Certificate Authority Setting section.

Certificate Authority Setting - Field and Description Table




Field	Description
Certificate Authority*	Select a preferred certificate authority from the dropdown list.
CA Account*	Select a preferred CA Account from the dropdown list.
Connector Name*	Select preferred clusters from the dropdown list.

Field	Description
Category*	Select a certificate group from the dropdown list.

5. Click **Generate CA Setting**.



Note:

- To download the Issuer CA/CA Setting as a YAML file, click .
- To see the commands in the full screen view, click .
- To copy the command, click .

6. Click **Add** to add the CA setting to the CA Setting Inventory list.

Deleting an Issuer CA

You can delete issuer CA from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated issuer CA.

To delete a issuer CA:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**.
2. Select the designated issuer CA, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



Note:

- Issuer CA or Certificate Authority Setting configured for the cluster or a specific namespace can be deleted from the Issuer CA inventory. Deleting the Issuer CA setting or YAML configuration from the inventory will not delete the Setting deployed as a YAML configuration in the cluster.
- Issuer CA can be removed from Issuer CA inventory only if the associated certificates issued by the specific Issuer CA are deleted from the Secure Apps Inventory.
- Along with the above, Users are recommended to delete the respective kubernetes Issuer CA resources created or deployed in the cluster manually, Issuer CA deployed in the cluster can be of type CASetting (or) CASettingCluster. The commands are:



- **For CASetting:** `kubectl delete CASetting <casetting-name> -n <namespace-name>`.
- **For CASettingCluster:** `kubectl delete CASettingCluster <casettingcluster-name>`.

Push and Revoke Issuer CA

KUBE+ enables a self-service feature of managing KUBE+ related kubernetes resources in the clusters directly from the KUBE+ control plane.

Cluster administrators or DevOps team can Push the Issuer CA/Certificate Authority Setting directly from the inventory into the respective cluster, this enables to reduce the efforts of manually downloading the Issuer CA/Certificate Authority Setting as YAML, copying it to the cluster and deploying it.

Similarly the cluster administrators or DevOps team can also Revoke (Delete) the Issuer CA/Certificate Authority Settings deployed in the specific cluster instead of executing the delete commands manually in the cluster.

- [Pushing an Issuer CA](#)
- [Revoking an Issuer CA](#)

Pushing an Issuer CA

To push the issuer CA created,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**.
2. Select an issuer CA from the inventory that is in a deployed state.
3. Click **PUSH**.

Revoking an Issuer CA

To revoke the issuer CA created,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER PKI > Issuer CA**.
2. Select an issuer CA from the inventory that is in a deployed state.
3. Click **Revoke**.

Secure Apps Inventory

In KUBE+, Enroll Certificates and Download Certificates refer to the process of creating a Kubernetes resource known as "Cert" (Enroll new certs) and "CertLoad" (Download existing certs) which represents an SSL/TLS certificate deployed in Secrets and Pods respectively. The Cert resource is generated by the cert-orchestrator and includes an associated certificate signing request and CertLoad resource is generated by the cert-orchestrator and consumed by the appviewx-csi-provider which also includes an associated certificate signing request. This request is then sent to the Certificate Authority (CA) for signing through the KUBE+ platform.

The Enroll Certificate inventory list includes the following information:

Enroll Certificate Inventory - Column Description Table

Column Name	Description
Certificate Name	Name of the certificate.
Common Name	Common name of the certificate.
Cluster Name	Name of the cluster.
CA Settings Type	Type of the CA settings.
Enroll To	The endpoint to which the certificate is deployed. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Secret • Pod
Auto Renew	The status of auto-renewal for the enrolled certificates. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • True • False
Created By	User ID who enrolled the certificate.
Created Source	The source of the certificate enrollment request.
Updated Time	Last updated Timestamp.

- [Enrolling a Certificate](#)
- [Download a Certificate](#)

- [Deleting a Certificate](#)
- [Push and Revoke CERT](#)

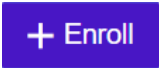
Enrolling a Certificate

Enroll enables the DevOps teams / application owners to request a certificate for their application deployed in the desired Kubernetes cluster. The certificate which is enrolled can be deployed directly to the Kubernetes secrets or even the local volumes of the Kubernetes pods (or) containers.

Prerequisites:

- [CA Integration](#) done.
- [CA Policy](#) created.
- [Certificate Groups](#) created.
- [Cluster Policy](#) created.
- [Issuer CA](#) configured in KUBE+ and deployed in your cluster.

To enroll a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Apps** .
2. Click  **+ Enroll** .
3. On the **Enroll Certificate** page, enter/select the field information in the General Information section for Cert resource to be created on Kubernetes cluster.

General Information Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Enroll Cert To	Select the endpoint where the cert is to be deployed. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Secret: KUBE+ enrolls certificate and stores signed certificate and key in k8s secret • POD : KUBE+ has CSI provider which provisions certificate in the pods local volume
Format	The certificate file format that should be downloaded to the pod. The supported formats include PEM, PFX, P12, and JKS.

Field	Description
Encoding	The encoding type of the file content. Supported types include utf-8, hex, and base64.
File Name	The name of the certificate file to be created in the pod.
Password	If the certificate download is password-protected, provide the password.
Alias Name	The alias name in the keystore for the certificate file format, when it is in JKS format.
Alias Password	The password for the alias.
Is CA Required	Download the trust store for the enrolled certificate. Set to "False" will result in the download only leaf certificates.
Cluster	Select a cluster where the certificate to be deployed from the dropdown list.
CA Setting Name	Select a certificate authority to be used for signing the CSR from dropdown list.
Certificate Authority	The Certificate Authority used for certificate enrollment as configured in the Cluster Policy.
Certificate Category	The type of certificate. The options include 'Client' and 'Server'.
Certificate Name	Enter a Certificate Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.
Namespace	The name of the namespace within the Kubernetes cluster where the secret is to be created.
Secret Name	Enter a Secret Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.
Enable Auto Renewal	Select a auto renewal option. The options are:

Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • False (default) - Certificates will not be automatically renewed prior to their expiration. • True - Certificates can be automatically renewed before they expire.
Renewal Policy	If Auto renewal set to "True", users have the option to renew certificates either by 'Regenerating a new key' or 'Renewing with the existing key'.
Renew Before 'X' days	Set the auto-renewal period prior to the certificate's expiration.
CSR Validity	The validity for the CSR in the cluster, if not approved. The default is 24 hours.
Overwrite valid certificates	Replace existing valid certificates with the newly enrolled certificate.

4. Enter/select field information in the CSR Parameter section.

CSR Parameter Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
CSR Generation Endpoint	The default CSR generation endpoint option is K8s Secret. In the scenario where private keys need to be generated in AppViewX, users can choose the CSR endpoint as 'AppViewX'.
Common Name	Enter the common name of the cert.
Subject Alternative Name	Select a Subject Alternative Name from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DNS - DNS of the cert • IP Address - IP Address of the cer
DNS/IP Address	Enter the DNS/IP address of the cert.
Organization	Enter the organization of the cert.
Organization Unit	Enter the organization unit of the cert.

Field	Description
Locality	Enter the locality of the cert.
Street	Enter the street of the cert.
State	Enter the state of the cert.
Province	Enter the province of the cert.
Country	Enter the country of the cert.
Postal Code	Enter the postal code of the cert.
Email Address	Enter the email address of the cert.

5. Enter/select the field information in the **Private Key Parameters** section.

Private Key Parameters Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Key Type	Select a key type of the cert from the dropdown list. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RSA • EC
Bit Length	Select the bit length from the dropdown list. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CSR param bit lengths for RSA are 2048/4096/3072. • CSR param bit lengths for EC are 256/384/521.

6. Click **Generate Cert YAML** to get the certificate for enrollment in the **Certificate YAML** field.



Note:

• To download the enrolled CERT configuration as a YAML file, click



• To see the commands in the full screen view, click the



• To copy the command, click



7. Click **Add** to add the certificate to the Enroll Certificate inventory list.

Download a Certificate

Download enables the DevOps teams and application owners to download a retrieve certificate from certificate inventory for their application deployed in the desired Kubernetes cluster. The certificate which is downloaded can be deployed directly to the Kubernetes secrets or even the local volumes of the Kubernetes pods or containers.

Prerequisites

- A valid certificate and key available in the certificate inventory of KUBE+.

To download a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Apps**.
2. Click **Download**.
3. On the **Download Certificate** page, enter/select the field information in the General Information section for CertLoad resource to be created on Kubernetes cluster.

Download Certificate - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Certificate Type	The type of certificate to be downloaded from the inventory. The type can be either 'Server' or 'Client'.
Common Name	Common name of the certificate.
Look for certificates in Inventory	The 'Search' button allows you to retrieve certificates based on the provided common name.
Select Certificate	Select the certificate from the search results.
Serial Number	Select the associated serial number of the certificate
Certificate Name	Enter a Certificate Name for certificate storage within the K8s cluster.
Download To	Select the endpoint where the cert is to be deployed. The options are:

Field	Description
	<p>Secret: KUBE+ enrolls the certificate and stores signed certificate and key in k8s secret.</p> <p>POD: KUBE+ has a CSI provider, which provisions certificate in the pod's local volume.</p>
Namespace	The name of the namespace within the Kubernetes cluster where the secret will be created.
Secret Name	Enter a Secret Name for storing the certificate within the K8s cluster.
Format	The certificate file format that should be downloaded to the pod. The supported formats include PEM, PFX, P12, and JKS.
Encoding	The encoding type of the file content. Supported types include utf-8, hex, and base64.
Password	If the certificate download is password-protected, provide the password.
Alias Name	The alias name in the keystore for the certificate file format, when it is in JKS format.
Alias Password	The password for the alias.
Is CA Required	Download the trust store for the enrolled certificate. Set to "False" will result in the download only leaf certificates.
File Name	The name of the certificate file to be created in the pod.

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the certificate to be downloaded in the **Download YAML** field.
5. Copy and deploy the YAML in the cluster to retrieve the certificate from the Inventory. After the deployment is finished, click **Cancel**.
6. Alternatively, the YAML configuration can also be downloaded as a YAML file.

Deleting a Certificate

You can delete certificates from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated certificate.

To delete a certificate:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER SECURITY > Secure Apps**.
2. Select the designated certificate, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



Note:

- You can delete the YAML configurations generated for enrolling/downloading a certificate to the Kubernetes secret or Pod from the Secure Apps Inventory.
- Deleting the Certificate Enroll/Download configuration from the inventory does not automatically delete the deployed certificate on a secret or pod. Users are recommended to manually delete the certificate from the respective secret or pod.
- In addition to the above, users are encouraged to delete the corresponding Kubernetes resources created, such as "Cert" for Enroll and "CertLoad" for Download certificates. This step ensures a thorough cleanup of certificates deployed in the cluster. The commands are:
 - For certificates enrolled via KUBE+: `kubectl delete Cert <cert-name> -n <namespace-name>`.
 - For certificates downloaded via KUBE+: `kubectl delete CertLoad <cert-name> -n <namespace-name>`.

Push and Revoke CERT

KUBE+ enables a self-service feature of managing KUBE+ related kubernetes resources in the clusters directly from the KUBE+ control plane.

Cluster administrators or DevOps team can Push the **Cert** and **CertLoad** resources used for generating certificate signing requests directly from the inventory into the respective cluster, this enables to reduce the efforts of manually downloading the Resources as YAML, copying it to the cluster and deploying it.

Similarly, the cluster administrators or DevOps team can also Revoke (Delete) the **Cert** and **CertLoad** Resources deployed in the specific cluster instead of executing the delete commands manually in the cluster.

- [Pushing a Cert](#)
- [Revoking a Cert](#)

Pushing a Cert

To push the Cert or CertLoad Resources created,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER SECURITY > Secure Apps**.
2. Select a Cert or CertLoad from the inventory that is in a deployed state.
3. Click **PUSH**.

Revoking a Cert

To revoke the Cert or CertLoad Resources created,

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > CLUSTER SECURITY > Secure Apps**.
2. Select a Cert or CertLoad from the inventory that is in a deployed state.
3. Click **Revoke**.

Secure Service Mesh with mTLS authentication

KUBE+ enables the PKI and InfoSec team to move towards Zero Trust Container Security by enabling scalable mTLS certificate issuance for authentication between microservices in Service Mesh Integrations.

- [Why Zero Trust is Critical?](#)
- [AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh](#)
- [Enabling AppViewX Signer](#)

Why Zero Trust is Critical?

Zero Trust helps organizations achieve compliance with industry and government regulations such as HIPAA, GDPR, and PCI-DSS. It ensures that access to sensitive data is strictly controlled and monitored, and that security policies are consistently enforced across the organization.

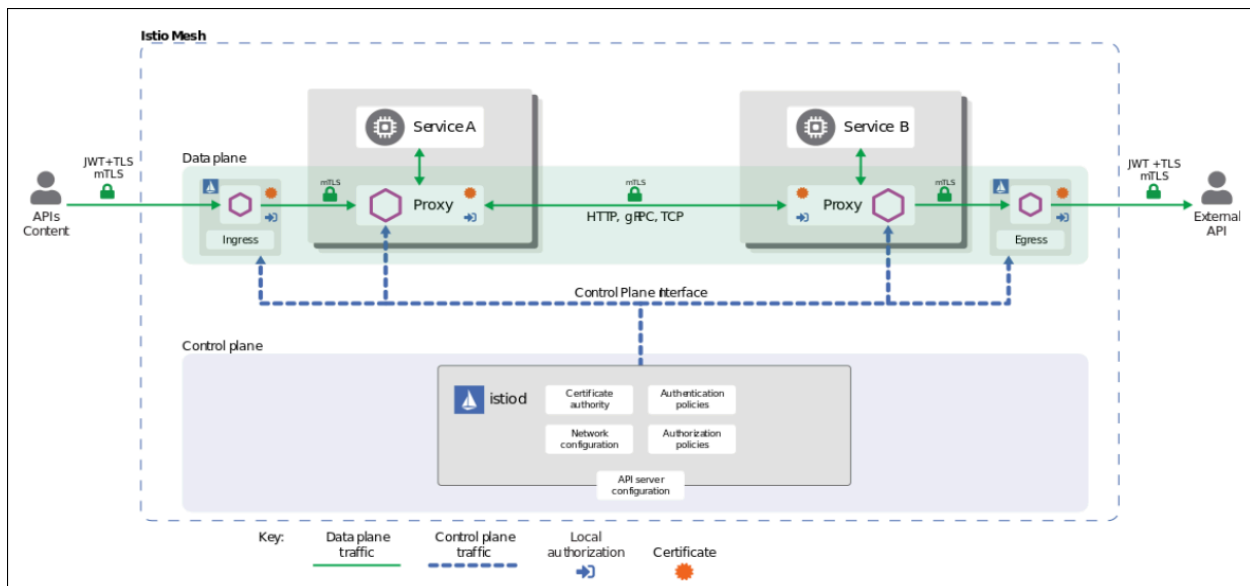
AppViewX Integration with Istio Service Mesh

Istio is a popular service mesh solution that provides traffic management, security, and observability for microservices-based applications. Integrating Zero Trust with Istio provides an additional layer of security for microservices-based applications. By enforcing access controls, Istio ensures that only authorized traffic is allowed between microservices.

- [mTLS with Istio Service Mesh](#)

mTLS with Istio Service Mesh

Istio can provide mutual TLS (Transport Layer Security) authentication, which ensures that both the client and server are authenticated before communication takes place. This is important for preventing unauthorized access, man-in-the-middle attacks, and data breaches. Istio uses the Envoy proxy to handle all network traffic, which allows it to manage mTLS encryption and decryption for each service. Istio also provides a certificate authority (CA) that can issue certificates for each service, allowing them to authenticate each other.



- [Certificate Issuance & Management](#)

Certificate Issuance & Management

Istio's Certificate Authority (CA) is not compliant with industry standards, which require CAs to follow strict procedures for certificate issuance and management. The root certificate and private key of the Istio Certificate Authority (CA) is stored within the cluster which can be a potential security risk and this can lead to vulnerabilities in certificate management.

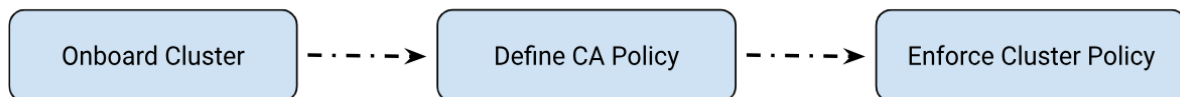
To eliminate the above there is a need to ensure the certificates in the control and data plane are rooted in the enterprise chain of trust but the real-world challenge with certificate management and Istio is how to integrate with existing enterprise PKI solutions.

Enabling AppViewX Signer

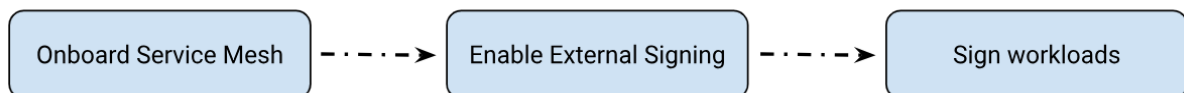
AppViewX Signer, the sub component of cert-orchestrator deployed in the Kubernetes cluster here solves the real-world challenge of Istio by signing the workload certificates with a trusted CA and installing the trust anchor within the cluster in auto enrolled fashion.

2 Steps to Enable the Zero Trust Security for Containers Using mTLS Certificates

1. Enforce PKI policies to ensure the use of compliant CAs and strong crypto-standards in your service mesh configuration.



2. Enable External CA signing mode for your Service Mesh configuration to sign workloads with mTLS certificates from your Enterprise PKI.



Steps to Enable a Signer for mTLS Certificate Issuance

To enable Signer for mTLS certificate issuance for your cluster, follow these below steps.

1. **Onboard Cluster** - Deploy / enable AppViewX Signer as a part of the KUBE+ component (cert-orchestrator).
2. **Policy Enforcement** - Define and enforce CA and Cluster Policy
3. **Onboard Mesh** - Configure CSR signing mode and the Certificate Authority to be used in Service Mesh.
4. **Enable External CA Mode** - Configure Service Mesh to External CA mode for CSR signing.

- [Onboard Cluster](#)
- [Policy Enforcement for Secure ServiceMesh](#)

Onboard Cluster

To deploy and enable signer component the KUBE+ component cert-orchestrator should be deployed in your Kubernetes cluster where the Service Mesh is enabled.

- [New Cluster](#)
- [Existing Cluster](#)

New Cluster

If you are deploying the cert-orchestrator for the first time in your cluster refer [Onboarding a Cluster](#) to obtain the deployment configuration for deploying cert-orchestrator.

**Note:**

While generating the deployment configuration select the Feature gate **Enable mTLS Certificates for Service Mesh** which enables AppViewX Signer as a part of the deployment.

Existing Cluster

For an already onboarded cluster in KUBE+ the signer component can be enabled via modifying the deployment configuration and executing the updated installation command at your cluster.

Refer to [Modifying Feature Gates of Cluster](#) for the steps on how to add (or) delete feature gates to an existing deployment.



Note: While generating the modifying the deployment configuration select the Feature gate **Enable mTLS Certificates for Service Mesh** which enables AppViewX Signer as a part of the deployment.

Policy Enforcement for Secure ServiceMesh

To enable mTLS certificate issuance for application workloads from your Enterprise PKI, the PKI policies should be defined and enforced for your Service Mesh deployment.

The process for defining and enforcing the policy definition for your service mesh deployment is as follows.

1. **CA Integration** - Integrate AppViewX KUBE+ with your Internal CA for signing the certificates for your service mesh workloads.
2. **CA Policy** - Define CA Policy to enforce your organization crypto standards and map them to Certificate Groups (to categorize certificates based on business units).
3. **Enforce Cluster Policy** - Enforce dedicated CA Policy / PKI policy to one more cluster to promote secure and compliant certificate management practices.

- [CA Integration](#)
- [CA Policy](#)
- [Cluster Policy](#)

CA Integration

Service Mesh can be integrated with your Enterprise Internal PKI only for signing application workloads with mTLS certificates.

AppViewX supports integrating with EJBCA and Microsoft CA for signing the mTLS service mesh workloads. Refer [CA Integration](#) for the steps on how to configure AppViewX KUBE+ with the respective Certificate Authority.

CA Policy

Configure certificate issuance parameters to enforce strong crypto standards for your mTLS workloads. Refer [CA Policy](#) for the steps on how to configure CA policy and [Certificate Group](#) for associate policies to certificate groups.

Cluster Policy

Configure Cluster Policy to enforce a dedicated CA/PKI policy for the service mesh external CA integration. Refer [Create Policy](#) for the steps on how to configure the Cluster Policy.



Note : For Service Mesh External CA signing the policy type must be set to **CA Setting Cluster** and the certificate authorities supported are EJBCA and Microsoft CA

Mesh Inventory

- [Mesh Inventory Overview](#)

Mesh Inventory Overview

Mesh Inventory displays a list of service mesh onboarded for a cluster. On Mesh Inventory page, you can:

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.

The mesh inventory list includes the following information:

Mesh Inventory - Column and Description Table

Mesh Name	Description
Name	Unique name to identify the mesh configuration for the designated cluster.
Cluster Name	Name of the Cluster for which the service mesh requires external CA signing.
CA Mode	Issuer's CA mode.
Vendor	The vendor name of the service mesh.
Certificate Authority	Certificate Authority to verify the identities of requesting certificates and links them to cryptographic keys by issuing digital certificates.
Created By	Refers to the user who created the mesh.

- [Onboarding a Mesh](#)
- [Deleting a Mesh](#)
- [Significance of Issuer CA Mode](#)

Onboarding a Mesh

To enable External CA signing for the Service Mesh deployed in your cluster, the Cert-orchestrator running with the Signer component needs to be enabled with a Certificate Authority Setting (CA Setting),

a Kubernetes resource that represents the configuration of certificate authorities (CAs) responsible for generating signed certificates through certificate signing requests.

Prerequisites:

- [CA Integration](#) done.
- [CA Policy](#) created.
- [Certificate Groups](#) created.
- [Cluster Policy](#) created.

To onboard a mesh:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Mesh Inventory**.
2. Click **Onboard Mesh** on the menu bar.
3. On the **Onboard Mesh** page, enter/select the field information for the **General Information** and **Mesh Certificate Authority** sections.

General Information - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
General Information	
Name	Enter a unique name that can be used to identify the mesh configuration associated with the specified cluster.
Cluster	Select a cluster from the dropdown list in which the service mesh needs to be configured with an external CA for signing.
Vendor	Select a service mesh vendor from the dropdown list.
Mesh Certificate Authority	
Issuer CA mode	Select a radio button of Issuer CA mode. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • via AppViewX - This option allows to send the workload certificate signing requests directly to AppViewX and signed by the configured CA Setting (Certificate Authority). The supported CA is EJBCA.



Field	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Air-Gapped - This option allows to sign the workload certificate signing requests by an Intermediate/SUB CA where the signing happens within the Kubernetes cluster. The Supported CAs are EJBCA and Microsoft CA.
Select Policy	Select the Cluster Policy from the dropdown list, which derives the associated CA for external CA signing.
Certification Authority	This field is not applicable, if you choose via AppViewX for Issuer CA mode. If you select Issuer CA mode as Air-Gapped, then enter/select the necessary details.
Ca Account	The account of the CA.
Common Name	Common name of the certificate.
Organization	Enter the name of the organization.
Organization unit	Enter the name of the organization unit.
Locality	Enter the locality of the certificate.
State	Enter the state of the certificate.
Country	Enter the country of the certificate.
Email Address	Enter the email address of the certificate.
Private Key Parameters	
Key Type	Select a key type of the certificate from the dropdown list. The values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RSA • ECDSA
Bit Length	Select a bit length for RSA or ECDSA. The values for RSA are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2048 • 4096 • 3072

Field	Description
	The values for ECDSA are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 256 • 384 • 521

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the commands in the Issuer CA YAML field.



Note:

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

5. Click **Add** to add the mesh to the Mesh Inventory list.

Deleting a Mesh

You can delete mesh from the inventory, if the user chooses to restrict and remove CLM operations on the designated mesh.

To delete a mesh:

1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Inventory > Mesh Inventory**.
2. Select the designated mesh, regardless of whether it is in a Managed or Unmanaged state.
3. Click **Delete** on the menu bar.



Note:

- A mesh can be removed from the inventory after deleting its associated configurations, including Cluster Policy, Issuer CA, and Certificates enrolled for the cluster, have been removed.
- Deleting mesh from the inventory will not remove the in-cluster KUBE+ components. Users are required to follow the [Uninstall and Clean Up](#) steps within the mesh to complete the removal process.

Significance of Issuer CA Mode

Issuer CA mode for External CA signing plays a vital role in optimizing the speed of certificate issuance to your application workloads running as a part of the service mesh infrastructure.

AppViewX KUBE+ supports multiple modes of Issuer CA for mTLS certificate issuance.

- **Issuer Mode via AppViewX** : In this mode of issuing a mTLS certificate for a workload, the CSR requests are sent to AppViewX via API from the Cert-orchestrator (appviewx signer) deployed in your Kubernetes cluster to the cluster (or) environment where AppViewX is deployed.

Example : Assume an on premises k8s cluster where your workloads are running and the CSR requests are sent to the AppViewX environment provided as a SaaS service to your enterprise. In this case the network hops and delays for the CSR request to land to AppViewX and then signed by CA will not be optimal.

Also, the CSR generated by service mesh (Istio in this case) is valid for 10 seconds only for a workload and the entire process of signing the certificate by CA via AppViewX should be completed within this time frame.

AppViewX recommends to use Issuer mode as AppViewX only when the clusters running workload and AppViewX environment are nearer to each other.

- **Issuer Mode via Air-Gapped** : In this mode of issuing a mTLS certificate for a workload, the AppViewX signer component running as a part of Cert-orchestrator generates a SUB CA / Issuing CA and the certificate and key used for signing the workloads are kept in the memory of the signer component itself for faster mTLS certificate issuance.

The signer component also keeps the signing certificate and the private key encrypted in the k8s secret for reusing it when the cert-orchestrator pods or clusters are restarted.

AppViewX recommends using Issuer mode as Air-Gapped when your AppViewX subscription is a SaaS service and when the clusters running workload and AppViewX environment are not at the nearest proximity.

Enable External Signing

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating a Signer Profile](#)

Overview

Configuring the External CA configuration settings which includes Certificate Authority Settings and the Issuer CA mode, the AppViewX signer needs to be plugged in to the service mesh configuration to sign certificate from External CA


Prerequisites:

- [Service Mesh onboarded](#) in the Mesh Inventory.

Creating a Signer Profile

In the context of Service Mesh, the term "Signer" refers to Kubernetes resources that are responsible for configuring and enabling the external CA signing mode. These resources facilitate the provision of signed certificates to workloads within the Service Mesh.

To enable an external CA signing mode in service mesh:



1. Go to **menu > KUBE+ > Cluster Security > Secure Service Mesh** .
2. Click  **+ Create Signer Profile** .
3. On the **Create Signer** page, enter/select the field information.

Signer Creation - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Name	Enter a unique name for the signer.
Mesh Name	Select a service mesh configuration associated to the cluster onboarded in earlier.
CA Mode	Select a designated issuance mode for the associated Mesh Certificate Authority.
Profile Name	Enter a unique profile name. For example, <domain>/istio.
External Secret Name	Enter the name of the secret where the trust store certificate should be synchronized.
External Secret Namespace	Enter the namespace of the secret.
Duration	Enter the duration in the hours.

4. Click **Generate YAML** to get the commands in the **Signer YAML** field.

**Note:**

- To see the commands in the full screen view, click the .
- To copy the command, click .

5. Click **Add** to add the signer to the Signer inventory list.

Integrating Istio with Custom CA

- [About Integrating Istio with Custom CA](#)

About Integrating Istio with Custom CA

AppViewX signer deployed in your cluster is now ready to sign all your service mesh application workload certificates from External Certificate Authority.

The Istio Service Mesh deployed in your cluster now needs to be reconfigured to enable Custom CA integration for provisioning workload certificates from External CA. Istio enables Custom CA integration using Kubernetes CSR API.

The root certificate for Custom CA in our case the Trust Certificate from EJBCA / Microsoft CA is loaded into the external ca secret configured in [Signer Profile](#) step. Refer to [Custom CA](#) integration steps in the Istio documentation to use the external CA secret.



Note: Change the Istio version accordingly in the URL to refer to the respective version of Istio deployed in your cluster.

Alerts and Logs

- [Alerts](#)
- [Alert Expiry](#)
- [Logs](#)

Alerts

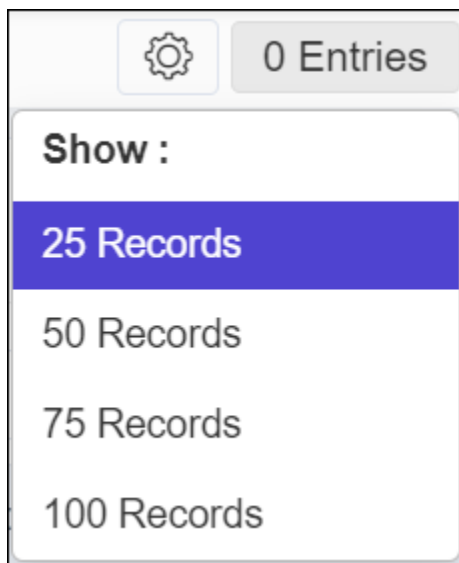
Certificate Alerts helps you with alerts that are related to certificates. You can configure these alerts based on certificate events such as sync, validation, or expiry. Any certificate-related actions performed in your application are captured as logs. Also, you can notify users of a specific certificate action through these alerts.

For the Alert Inventory, go to **Menu > KUBE+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Alerts > Certificate** tab.

Alerts Inventory displays a list of alerts configured for the certificate. On the Alerts Inventory page, you can:

- Search for alerts.

set the rows displayed on the page by hovering the mouse over the **Entries**.



- Filter the alerts based on the date range by clicking  and/or column name by clicking



The alert inventory list includes the following information:

Column Name	Description
Timestamp	Date and time when the alert generation.


Column Name	Description
ID	Unique identification of the alert.
Event type	Type of event for which the alert notification is configured refers to the specific category that triggers the alert.
Severity	The severity assigned to the alert. The severity levels are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Critical • Fatal • Major • Minor • Notification
Category	Category of the alert notification.
Devices	IP address of the device for which the alert notification has been configured.
Applications	Name of the application.
Purpose/Usage	The message for which the alert notification is created for.
Alert detail	The message for the alert notification typically includes essential information about the triggered event. It provides enough details to help administrators quickly understand the nature of the alert. Sample message: <code>Revocation check Failure : The revocation check failed for CA AppViewX Intermediate CA with CRL distribution point http://<IP address>/controller/avxcrl?crlFileName=12639169131919917963458143526188567731.crl&tenant=avx.Please ensure proxy/Internet is available and should not be restricted by firewall.</code>

- [Configuring a Certificate Expiry Alert](#)
- [Configuring a Certificate Sync Alert](#)
- [Configuring a Certificate Validation Alert](#)
- [Configuring a Connection Failure Alert](#)

Configuring a Certificate Expiry Alert

Certificate expiry alerts are sent to designated recipients for all certificates that are set to expire on the date specified on the Settings: Certificate expiry alert screen.


To configure a certificate expiry alert:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Certificate**.
2. Click the  (**Settings**) icon.
3. Enter a name for the certificate alert.
4. In the **Event Type** field, select Certificate Expiry Alert.
5. Select Critical as the severity of the alert.
6. Select the **Certificate Category** from the dropdown list.
7. In the **Expires in (days)** field, enter the number of days before a certificate expires. An alert will be sent out.
8. To use **Email Configuration** to send the alert, complete the following steps:
 - Select the **Email Configuration** checkbox.
 - In the **Email Address** field, enter the email addresses you want to send the alert to. Use commas to separate the addresses.
 - In the **Subject** field, leave the default text or enter the text that briefly describes the alert the user is receiving.
9. To use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to send the alert, complete the following steps:
 - Enter the **Destination IP** for the alert.
 - Select the version of SNMP you want to use: V1 or V2.
 - Enter the port that should be used for the alert.
10. Enter the **Community String** for the alert. The string is similar to a user ID or password and allows users to access the requested information on the device.
11. Click **Add** to create the alert. It then appears at the bottom of the screen and on the Certificate tab within the Alert module.

Configuring a Certificate Sync Alert

AppViewX maintains a record of what certificate is mapped to which Server:Application service, which can be seen on the certificate's holistic view. This information is used by AppViewX to monitor continued existence of the certificate on Server:Application. AppViewX establishes connectivity to the Server and validates if the Application is still configured with the Certificate. Any change in the status is flagged out as a Certificate Sync Alert. This can also be visualized through the change of Application Connector status color. The Application Connectors on the Certificate's holistic view will turn Red in such circumstances.

To configure a certificate sync alert:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Certificate**.
2. Click the  (**Settings**) icon.
3. In the **Event Type** field, select Certificate Sync Alert.
4. Enter/select the alert details.

Alert Details - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
*Alert name	Enter a unique name for the alert.
*Event type	From the dropdown list, select Certificate Sync Alert .
*Vendor	From the dropdown list, select the vendor for the alert criteria.

5. Enter a name for the certificate alert.
6. Select the Alert severity of the alert: Critical, Major, and Notification.
7. In the **Alert Message** field, enter the text that users see when the alert appears on the screen.
8. Select the **Vendor** whose device or application you are creating an alert for.
9. Select the **Certificate Category** from the dropdown list.
10. In the **Device Name** field, select the device associated with the certificate you are creating an alert for.
11. In the **Application** field, select the application associated with the certificate you are creating an alert for.
12. Select the **Execute Script** checkbox.
13. In the **Execute Script** dropdown list, select the script to trigger the alert. To create a script, click the (Add new script) icon. The below page appears.
 - Provide value in the **Name** field.
 - Type by default is selected as Python.
 - Provide description value in the **Description** field.
 - Enter the script to be executed in the **Script** field and click **Save**.
14. To use the **Email Configuration** to send the alert, complete the following steps:
 - Select the **Email Configuration** checkbox.
 - In the **Email Address** field, enter email addresses to send the alert to. Use commas to separate the addresses.
 - In the **Subject** field, leave the default text or enter the text that briefly describes the alert the user is receiving.

15. To use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to send the alert, complete the following steps:
 - Enter the **Destination IP** for the alert.
 - Select the version of SNMP you want to use: V1 or V2.
 - Enter the port that should be used for the alert.
 - Enter the **Community String** for the alert. The string is similar to a user ID or password and allows users to access the requested information on the device.
16. Click **Add** to create the alert. It then appears at the bottom of the screen and on the Certificate tab within the Alert module.

Configuring a Certificate Validation Alert

AppViewX acts as a repository of all the known certificates in the organization. A certificate identifies a application via its Subject Common Name. In many a circumstance it observed that the organizations faces certificate related outages even if the certificate is valid. This is because of an error while setting up the application configuration or invalid certificate selected for the application. To identify such a misconfiguration AppViewX periodically validates the identity of application but trying and establishing connectivity to the Subject Common Name of server certificates in the Inventory. If the certificate is exchanged as part of SSL handshake is found to be invalid through expiry, revocation or through misconfiguration, AppViewX triggers a Certificate Validation Alert to notify administrators about a SSL handshake issue that users could be facing.

To configure a certificate validation alert:

1. Go to **(Menu) > CERT+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Configure Alerts**.
The **Configure Certificate Alerts** page is displayed.
2. In the **Event Type** field, select **Certificate Validation Alert**.
3. Enter a name for the certificate alert.
4. Select the severity of the alert: Critical, Major, or Notification.
5. In the Alert Message field, enter the text that users see when the alert appears on the screen.
6. Select the Vendor whose device or application you are creating an alert for.
7. Select the Certificate Category from the dropdown list.
8. In the Device Name field, select the device associated with the certificate you are creating an alert for.
9. In the Application field, select the application associated with the certificate you are creating an alert for.
10. To use the Email Configuration to send the alert, complete the following steps:

- Select the Email Configuration checkbox.
 - In the Email Address field, enter email addresses to send the alert to. Use commas to separate the addresses.
 - In the Subject field, leave the default text or enter the text that briefly describes the alert the user is receiving.
11. To use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) to send the alert, complete the following steps:
- Enter the Destination IP for the alert.
 - Select the **version** of SNMP you want to use: V1 or V2.
 - Enter the port that should be used for the alert.
 - Enter the Community String for the alert. The string is similar to a user ID or password and allows users to access the requested information on the device.
12. Click **Add** to create the alert. It then appears at the bottom of the screen and on the Certificate tab within the Alert module.

Configuring a Connection Failure Alert

When a certificate is enrolled with AppViewX, a connection is established between the Certificate Authority (CA) signing the certificate. This connection is vital to perform CLM actions and certificate discovery tasks seamlessly.

When you can check manually if the connection is successfully established between AppViewX and certificate authority, and continues to stay so, starting version 2021.1.0, AppViewX allows you to configure automatic alerts when this connection fails. These alerts will be recorded in AppViewX logs as well as sent as email notifications.

To configure a connection failure alert:

1. Go to **(Menu) > CERT+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Configure Alerts**.
The **Configure Certificate Alerts** page is displayed.
2. Enter an **Alert name**.
3. From the **Event type** dropdown list, select **Certificate authority connection alert**.

4. From the **Certificate Authority Settings** dropdown list, select the CA Account
5. Set the **Alert severity** to critical.
6. To configure email alerts, in the **Email configuration** section, enter the **Email address** that will receive the email notifications in the event of a connection failure.
7. Enter the relevant subject in the **Subject** field.
8. To use the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) for sending the alerts:
 - a. Enter the **Destination IP** address for the alert.
 - b. Select the SNMP **version** to be used.
 - c. Enter the **Port** number to be used for the alert.
 - d. Enter the **Community string** for the alert.

The string is similar to a user ID or password and allows users to access the requested information on the device.

9. Click **Add** to create the alert.

The new alert is now listed in the **Certificate Alerts** page.
10. Click **Reset** if you want to re-enter the details.

Alert Expiry

Digital certificates or clusters are issued with a validity period predefined by the certificate authorities. When a certificate or cluster outgrows this validity period, it is no longer trusted and the services consuming the certificate or cluster are considered broken.

AppViewX lets you create certificate or cluster expiry alerts, which are proactive notifications to customers to renew the certificates or clusters that are due for expiry.

The alerts are primarily created based on the period of certificate or cluster expiry (certificates or clusters expiring on a specific date, certificates or clusters expiring after x number of days, and so on). The emails also include a certificate renewal link, thus simplifying the CLM process.

The following sections list the prerequisites for configuring the expiry alerts and the configuration steps.

- [Configuring Certificate/Cluster Expiry Alerts over Email/Slack](#)

Configuring Certificate/Cluster Expiry Alerts over Email/Slack

Prerequisites: Before configuring certificate expiry alerts over emails, **ensure that permissions to create and modify the expiry alerts are assigned to the required role(s).**



Note: Certificate renewal is allowed only for users having read and write permission to the certificate group. Ensure that you assign permissions accordingly.

- To do this, follow the instructions given [here](#) and enable **Expiry Alerts** under **Authorized Functions > CERT+**.
- [Modify the resource mapped to this role to assign the following workflow requests \(Access Control > Workflow Requests\)](#) to the resource:
 - **Cert_Expiry_Mail_Individual**
 - **Cert_Expiry_Mail_Bulk**

To configure certificate expiry alerts over email:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > ALERTS & LOGS > Expiry Alerts**.

The expiry alerts inventory is displayed.

2. To create a new email expiry alert, click **+ Create**.

The **ExpiryAlert > Expiry Alert Add** page is displayed.




Tip: This page has a list of best practices you are advised to follow when creating a new expiry alert.

3. For the new alert, enter a unique **Alert Name** (mandatory) and a description (optional) with additional details about the alert.
4. In the **Alert Configuration** section, click **+ Add**.
The **Add Configuration** pane is displayed.
5. Select the **Filter By** for which you want to configure the expiry alert.
 - **Cluster**
 - **Certificate**
6. For clusters, enter/select the **Filter Configuration** details.

Filter Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Cluster Name*	Select the clusters from the drop-down list for which you want to configure alerts.
Namespace*	Select the corresponding namespace of the selected clusters from the drop-down list for which you want to configure alerts.

Field	Description
Certificate Expiry Period*	<p>To filter clusters based on their expiry:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Range in days: Select this option to send an expiry alert email for clusters that will expire in the range of number days specified. For example, to set an alert for clusters that will expire between 10 to 40 days from today, enter 10 in the field before to and enter 40 in the field after to. • On specified days: Select this option to send an expiry alert email for clusters that will expire after x number of days from today. For example, to send an alert for clusters expiring on the 50th day days from today, enter 50. • Range in dates: Select this option to send an expiry alert for all clusters expiring in a specific duration. Use the calendar widget to select the Start date and End date of this duration.
Additional Filters	<p>To add a filter in addition to the cluster expiry period:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the required filter from the Select option dropdown list. Enter/select the corresponding value in the Type to enter value field. Click Add. <p>The selected filter option and its value are displayed.</p>
Notification Method*	<p>To send an expiry alert over email or Slack message, select either Email or Slack.</p>
Notification Format*	<div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  Note: This field is displayed only when Notification Method = Email. (Instead of emails for individual clusters, you will now receive a notification with a bulk of certificates in your chosen format.) </div> <p>Select the notification format to be sent via email, either as an attachment or in the email body using the table format.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attachment: A CSV file with details of all clusters due to expire will be attached to the alert email. • Email Body: A table with details of all clusters due to expire will be included in the body of the alert email.
Ignore renewed certificate	<p>When this field is enabled, results returned after the alert is triggered will not include clusters that have already been renewed, even though they match the filter criteria.</p>

Field	Description
* - Mandatory	

7. For certificates, enter/select the **Filter Configuration** details.

Filter Configuration Section - Field and Description Table


Field	Description
Certificate Expiry Period*	<p>To filter certificates based on their expiry:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Range in days: Select this option to send an expiry alert email for certificates that will expire in the range of number days specified. For example, to set an alert for certificates that will expire between 10 to 40 days from today, enter 10 in the field before to and enter 40 in the field after to. • On specified days: Select this option to send an expiry alert email for certificates that will expire after x number of days from today. For example, to send an alert for certificates expiring on the 50th day days from today, enter 50. • Range in dates: Select this option to send an expiry alert for all certificates expiring in a specific duration. Use the calendar widget to select the Start date and End date of this duration.
Additional Filters	<p>To add a filter in addition to the certificate expiry period:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select the required filter from the Select option dropdown list. Enter/select the corresponding value in the Type to enter value field. Click Add. <p>The selected filter option and its value are displayed.</p>
Notification Method*	To send an expiry alert over email or Slack message, select either Email or Slack .
Notification Format*	<p>NOTE: This field is displayed when Allow certificate renewal is disabled. (Instead of emails for individual certificates, you will now receive a notification with a bulk of certificates in your chosen format.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attachment: A CSV file with details of all certificates due to expire will be attached to the alert email. • Email Body: A table with details of all certificates due to expire will be included in the body of the alert email.

Field	Description
Ignore renewed certificate	When this field is enabled, results returned after the alert is triggered will not include certificates that have already been renewed, even though they match the filter criteria.
* - Mandatory	

8. Enter/select the **Email Configuration** details.

Email Configuration Section - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
To*	
Recipient(s)	Enter the recipient(s) email address. You can enter a maximum of 20 email addresses, separated by a comma.
Certificate Parameter(s)	To add more recipients for the alert email, you can retrieve email addresses from the following certificate parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Subject Email • SAN (rfc822) • Certificate Group From the dropdown list, select the required parameter(s).
Certificate Attribute(s)	To add more recipients for the alert email, you can retrieve email addresses from any certificate attribute that has the email ID as its value, for example, Cert Owner . From the dropdown list, select the certificate attribute.
CC	
Recipient(s)*	Enter the email address of stakeholders who are to receive a copy of the expiry alert email.
Email Subject	
Subject*	Enter the subject line for the expiry alert email.
Email Body	
Body*	Enter the body text for the email using the following (recommended) format: The list of placeholder that can be used in the Subject <list and it's value> Certificate with Common Name Common Name

Field	Description
	<p>Serial number Serial Number </p> <p>issued by Issuer Common Name </p> <p>is about to expire on Valid Until </p> <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0c0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  Note: The full list of placeholders and their corresponding values is given here. </div>
Certificate Parameters For Email Body*	<p>Select the certificate parameters from the drop-down menu that you want to include in the alert notification, either in the attachment or in the email body as a table. The following parameters are mandatory to be selected for the alert notification:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Common Name • Serial Number • Valid From • Valid Until
Certificate Attributes For Email Body*	<p>Select the user defined certificate attributes from the drop-down menu that you want to include in the alert notification, either in the attachment or in the email body as a table.</p>
* - Mandatory	

9. Click **Add**.

The created alert is listed under the Expiry Alert page.



Tip: To edit/delete an alert, use the **Edit/Delete** button, as required. You can add more alert configuration for the alert.

10. Under **Alert Execution Type**:

Note: The settings configured here will be applicable to all expiry alerts listed in the above table.

a. To trigger the alert immediately, select **Run Now** and click **Save**.

OR

b. To trigger the alert at a scheduled time, select **Schedule** and enter/select the following details:

- **Time Zone***
- **Frequency** (daily/weekly/monthly/yearly)
- **Starts On***
- **Ends**
 - For ends **ON**, use the calendar widget to select the date on which the last expiry alert email will be sent.
 - For ends **After**, enter the number of **Occurrences** after which the expiry alert will be discontinued.

11. Click **Save**.


The alert notification trigger based on the selected notification alert and format.

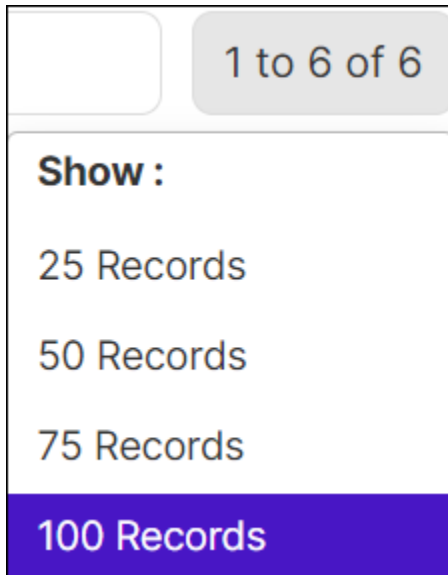
Logs

Logs keep track of all activities that take place within KUBE+ or any external entity that is connected to the AppViewX system. The Logging functionality in AppViewX tracks user activities and creates the service level event logs.

To access the logs related to KUBE+, go to **menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs** and then click the **Kube** tab, if not selected by default.

On the Logging page,

- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the Show popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.



- [Viewing Details of a Log](#)
- [Filtering the Logs](#)

Viewing Details of a Log

To view log details:


1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs**.
2. On the **Logging** page, click the **Kube** tab.
3. On the log screen, view all details for a log by hovering your cursor over each column of data or click the ► (**Expand**) icon for the log you want to view. The table row expands to display all details for the log.



Note: Search for any logs from the logging list based on User, Device name, log message, object details, source IP, AppViewX node, Method of login also search based on a particular column.

Filtering the Logs

To filter the logs:



1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > LOGS > Logs**.
2. Click the **Kube** tab.
3. On the Logging page, follow any of the following method to filter the logs:
 - Click  (**DateTime**) icon, select the date range, and then click **OK** to view the logs within the date range.
 - Click the dropdown option beside the DateTime icon, and then select the preferred option. The options are:
 - Service
 - User
 - Type
 - Log Message
 - Severity

System Administration

- [Crypto Minions](#)
- [Configuring Cluster Settings](#)
- [Configuring Email Settings](#)
- [Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates](#)
- [Auto Enrollment](#)

Crypto Minions

Crypto Minions displays the list of Crypto minions within a cert-orchestrator. On the Crypto Minions page,

- refresh the list, click the  (refresh) icon.
- go to the pages, click the  (navigation) icon.
- hover the mouse over the number of row displayed on the page, the **Show** popup opens and choose the no. of rows to be displayed on the page.

1 to 6 of 6

Show :

25 Records

50 Records

75 Records

100 Records

The cluster inventory list includes the following information:

Column Name	Description
Cluster Name	Name of the cluster.
Status	Status of the cluster.
No. of Nodes	Nodes enabled for the cluster.
Status	Status of the resource. The possible statuses are Managed, Unmanaged, or Pending Approval.
Cert Orchestrator Version	The version of Cert Orchestrator.
CSI Provider Version	The version tag of the image.
Infra Orchestrator Version	The version of the Infra Orchestrator.

Configuring Cluster Settings

To configure repository settings:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Repository Settings**.
2. On the Helm Repository section, enter the details. Contact AppViewX support to get the authentication credentials for the Helm repository.

Helm Repository - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Repository URL	Enter the helm repository URL.
Username	Enter the username.
Password	Enter the password.

3. When deploying AppViewX KUBE+ components in the cluster, kube rbac proxy image is used for RBAC authentication. This image is typically downloaded directly from the internet. However, if you need to pull the image from a custom repository, replace the URL and tag as follows:

- URL: gcr.io/kubebuilder/kube-rbac-proxy
- Tag: v0.13.0

4. On the Docker Repository section, enter the details. Contact AppViewX support to get the authentication credentials for the Docker repository.

Docker Repository - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Repository URL	Enter the Docker repository URL.
Username	Enter the username.
Password	Enter the password.

Configuring Email Settings

Within this section, you find email setting templates for certification action request. You have the capability to customize email IDs for each certification action requests. Once you've configured the email settings, emails will be automatically sent to the designated email addresses.

To configure email settings:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Email Settings**.
2. Click on the preferred certification action request.
3. Enter the valid email IDs in the displayed fields.

You can customize the field names by clicking on them and entering your preferred names.

Additionally, you can add more fields by clicking the **Add** button. If any of the fields are not required, you can remove them by clicking the delete icon.



Note: You can enter multiple email addresses, separated by commas.

4. Click **Save Changes**.

Setting up Configurations for Expired Certificates

You can configure the settings for handling expired certificates.

To configure the setting for the expired certificates:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Expired Certificates**.
2. On **Expired certificate** section, enter/select the following details:

Expired certificate - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Do you want to delete the expired certificates?	<p>The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No (default) - allows to retain the expired certificates. • Yes - to delete the expired certificates within the specified expiry date. When you select this option, you need to fill the following details: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of days after expiry • Backup Required • Do you want to delete the certificates from all groups?

3. On **Expired root and intermediate certificate** section, enter/select the following details:

Expired root and intermediate certificate - Field and Description Table

Field	Description
Do you want to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates?	<p>The options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No (default) - allows to retain the expired root and intermediate certificates. • Yes - to delete the expired root and intermediate certificates within the specified

Field	Description
	expiry date. When you select this option, you need to fill the Number of days after expiry field.

4. Click **Save**.

Auto Enrollment

- [EST](#)

EST

EST stands for Enrollment over Secure Transport, it is a certificate management protocol targeting Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) clients which require digital certificates to prove their authenticity. EST also helps the clients in acquiring associated CA certificates. Some prerequisites and features are as follows:

- There should be an agent (avx_vendor_cert_est_agent) up and running for EST in AppViewX.
- This EST plugin can either be in HTTPS or HTTP, but it needs a gateway which supports client certificate authentication running in order to communicate with the client.
- It is highly recommended to keep the 'Approval Required' flag OFF in the **Menu > KUBE+ > GROUPS & POLICIES > CA Policy** page.

- [Configuring EST](#)
- [Validating EST](#)

Configuring EST

To perform client certificate enrollments using EST protocol, the admin or a privileged user needs to first set up the EST server agent using the AppViewX portal. Upon successful set up of the EST server Agent through the portal, a URL will be generated. Clients can then use this URL to send enrollment requests to AppViewX via EST protocol.

The detailed steps for setting up the EST server agent are listed below:

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Auto Enrollment > EST**.
2. Select **Add** or **Configure Now**.

3. Configure the **End Point Details** details as follows:

Prerequisites for entering the IP/FQDN field:

- The "Cloud Connector Name" (in the Add Cloud connector page) must be the same as the FQDN name entered.
- The CC should have the reachability to the Endpoint.
- If entering the IP then ensure that a single cloud connector is used.

The following table provides the field description for Agent Details section:

End Point Details - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Name	Text	A unique name (alphanumeric string) to identify the agent setting. Acceptable Characters: A-Z, a-z, 0-9, '.', '_', '-'	Name should not start with special characters.
*FQDN/ IP	Text	Enter the FQDN/IP address of the AppViewX cloud connector.	Invalid FQDN/IP address (example: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx)
*Port	Text	HTTP gateway port of the AppViewX node.	Port will accept only numerical values between 0 to 65535.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

4. Configure the **Client Authentication** details as follows:

Client Authentication = Only Certificate TLS

Client Authentication = Certificate TLS with HTTPs as fallback or Both Certificate TLS and HTTPs

The following table provides the field description for CA Authentication section:

Details for CA Authentication- Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
Authentication Mode	Dropdown	Select any one authentication method to be carried out during communication with clients.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Only Certificate TLS</i> - During client authentication, only certificate TLS based authentication will be performed. • <i>Certificate TLS with HTTPS fallback</i> - During client authentication, when the certificate TLS fails, HTTPS based authentication will be performed as fallback. • <i>Both Certificate TLS and HTTPS</i> - During client authentication, both certificate TLS and HTTPS authentication will be performed one after the successful completion of the other. 	
*Issuer Certificate	Dropdown	Select one or more issuer certificates which needs to be checked for the client certificate authentication.	NA
*HTTP Authentication Mode	Radio button	<p>Select the type of HTTP auth mode either Basic/Digest.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Basic</i> - During Client authentication only the username and password values will be considered for HTTPS based authentication. • <i>Digest</i> - During Client authentication, along with username and password, nonce and realm values will also be supported. 	NA
*Fallback Credentials	Radio button	Select Manual/Logged on user credentials - based on the	


Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		<p>selection users can configure the credentials manually or save as credentials equivalent to the logged in user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Manual</i> - The Username and Password fields will be displayed to enter values. • <i>Logged on user credentials</i> - The Username and Password fields will not be displayed. 	
*Username	Text	Username for HTTP authentication.	NA
*Password	Text	Password for HTTP authentication.	NA
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

5. Configure the **CA Accounts** details as follows:

The following table provides the field description for CA Accounts section:

CA Accounts - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Certificate Group	Dropdown	Select a specific group under which certificate needs to be enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Category	Radio button	Select a specific certificate type (Server/Client) to be enrolled.	NA
*Select CA	Dropdown	<p>Select the required CA from the available options. The certificate will be enrolled under the selected CA.</p> <p>The CAs associated with the Default certificate group are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AppViewX • AppViewX PKIaaS • Amazon Private CA 	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DigiCert • DigiCert MPKI • Ejbca • Entrust • Entrust MPKI • GlobalSign Atlas • GlobalSign MSSL • Google • HydrantID • Microsoft Enterprise • Microsoft Standalone • Nexus <div style="border: 1px solid #00a0e3; border-radius: 10px; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note: The Vendor Specific Details and Custom Attributes section are displayed for some of the CAs as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DigiCert • EJBCA • Entrust • Entrust MPKI • GlobalSign MSSL • MS Enterprise • Nexus </div>	
<p>NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.</p>			

When **AppViewX** is selected as CA, The following table provides the field description for AppViewX CA:

Details for AppViewX CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Select	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		be used for certificate creation operations.	
*Server Certificate	Select	Type 3 or more letters of the certificate keywords after which a list of server certificates issued from the above selected CA account will be displayed, one certificate can be selected for further communications with SCEP client machine.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **AppViewX PKIaaS** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for AppViewX PKIaaS CA:

Details for AppViewXPKIaaS CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Issuer Location	Dropdown	Select an issuer location that is associated with the CA account.	NA
*Pool Name	Dropdown	Select a pool name to issue the certificate.	NA
*Issuer Name	Dropdown	Select an issuer name to issue the certificate.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.

When **Amazon Private CA** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Amazon Private CA:

Details for Amazon Private CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Region	Dropdown	Select a valid region associated with the CA account. The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.	NA
*Issuer	Dropdown	Select a valid issuer associated with the CA account.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.	
*Signature Algorithm	Dropdown	Select a valid issuer associated with the CA account. The dropdown is populated with the first available value from the group's associated policy. Select an appropriate value as required.	NA
*CA Certificate	Text	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Dropdown	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in years)	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **DigiCert CA** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for DigiCert CA:

Details for DigiCert CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Division	Dropdown	Select a division associated with the CA account. The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.	NA
*Certificate Type	Dropdown	Select a valid cert type associated with the CA account.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.	
*CA Certificate	Text	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Dropdown	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

If the **Select CA =DigiCert**, then a separate section **Vendor Specific Details** is displayed after the CA Accounts section with two fields described below.

Vendor Specific Details for DigiCert CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Server Type	Dropdown	Select a server type. The dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required.	NA
Payment Method	Dropdown	Select a payment method. The possible options are: 1. Bill To Account Balance - Pay with the account balance. Returns an error if this option is disabled for the account or if the account has an insufficient fund. 2. Bill To Default Credit Card - Pay with the account's default credit card. Returns an error if no default credit card is configured for the account	Alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the special characters <code>-_.</code> are allowed.

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **DigiCert MPKI** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for DigiCert MPKI:

Details for DigiCert MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Profiles	Dropdown	Select a profile from the dropdown option.	NA
*CA Certificate	Text	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			



Note: **Email address** is a mandatory field on the enrollment form for DigiCert MPKI, but while passing it in the CSR, it is not added in certificate subject DN. Therefore, to successfully renew DigiCert MPKI certificates using EST Fetch Certificate Parameters in EST Advanced Settings should be set to YES.

The **Custom Attributes** section is displayed on selecting the specific values from the **Profile** dropdown:

Custom Attributes for DigiCert MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Mandatory	Description	Validation
*common_name	Text	Yes	This field will be auto-populated from the CSR.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Mandatory	Description	Validation
*dnsName	Text	Yes	Enter a valid DNS name.	NA
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.				



Note: Based on the DigiCert MPKI account configuration **Custom Attributes** section may also be displayed on the endpoint configuration page.

When **Ejbca** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Ejbca CA:

Details for Ejbca CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Dropdown	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

If the selected CA is Ejbca, a separate section **Vendor specific details** is displayed after the CA Accounts section. The following table provides the field description for Vendor specific details:

Vendor Specific Details for Ejbca CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*End Entity Profile Name	Dropdown	Select a profile of an end entity.	NA
End entity user name	Text	Enter the user name for the end entity.	Alphanumeric characters, spaces, and the special characters <code>-_.*</code> are allowed.
*Issuer Common Name	Dropdown	Select a common name of an issuer.	NA
*Certificate Profile Name	Dropdown	Select a profile name of certificate.	NA
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **Entrust** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for **Entrust CA**:

Details for Entrust CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Certificate Type	Dropdown	Select a valid cert type associated with the CA account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the Certificate Category radio button is selected to <i>Server</i>, the dropdown is populated with the first available value. Select an appropriate value as required. If the Certificate Category radio button is selected to <i>Client</i>, the dropdown is populated with 'None' as the default value. 	NA
*CA Certificate	Text	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Dropdown	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.

- If the selected CA is **Entrust**, a separate section displaying **Vendor specific details** and **Custom Attributes** is displayed after the **CA Accounts** section.



Note: Based on the Entrust ECS account configuration **Custom Attributes section** may also be displayed as shown above.

Vendor Specific Details for Entrust CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
Additional Emails	Text	Enter the valid email address in the field.	NA
Requester Name	Text	Enter the requester name	NA
Requester Email	Text	Enter a valid email id.	NA
Requester Phone	Text	Enter the 10-digit phone number.	NA

When **Entrust MPKI** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Entrust MPKI CA:

Details for Entrust MPKI CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **GlobalSign Atlas** is selected as CA

The following table provides the field description for **GlobalSign Atlas CA**:

Details for GlobalSign Atlas CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Select CA	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
API Credential Friendly name	Dropdown	Select a CA Account to communicate with during the certificate enrollment actions.	NA
Certificate Profile	Dropdown	Select the certificate Profile from the dropdown.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Connector Name	Select	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Dropdown	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

A **Generic Fields** section is also displayed below the CA Accounts section. It contains the fields related to the CSR parameters based on the profile (API Credential Friendly name) selected. Only the Organization field is mandatory and is fetched from the selected profile. Rest of the fields are optional.

- When **GlobalSignMSSL** is selected as CA,

The following table provides the field description for GlobalSignMSSL CA:

Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Product Type	Dropdown	Select the specific Product Type. The values are fetched from the CA Settings configuration.	NA
*CA Certificate	Select	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Select	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Dropdown	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)	Certificate validity accepts

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
			only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

The following field is displayed in the **Vendor Specific Details** section as per the selected CA:

Vendor Specific Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Profile name	Dropdown	Select the Profile based on the configurations made in the Certificate Authority Setting.	NA

The following field is displayed in the **Point of Contact** section as per the selected CA. The CA mandates the point of contact information for traceability. All auto-enrollment requests via this endpoint will be registered with the point of contact information entered here.

POC Details for GlobalSign MSSL CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*First Name	Text	Enter the first name	NA
*Email Address	Text	Enter the valid email address	NA
*Phone Number	Text	Enter the valid phone number	NA

When **Google** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Google CA:

Details for Google CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*Certificate Profile	Dropdown	Select the certificate profile type.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Issuer Location	Dropdown	Select an issuer location that is associated with the CA account.	NA
*Pool Name	Dropdown	Select a pool name to issue the certificate.	NA
*Issuer Name	Dropdown	Select an issuer name to issue the certificate.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **HydrantID** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for HydrantID CA:

Details for HydrantID CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		be used for certificate creation operations.	
*HydrantID Policy	Dropdown	Select the policy associated with the CA Account to be used for certificate operations.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

When **Microsoft Enterprise** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Microsoft Enterprise CA:

Details for Microsoft Enterprise CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Text	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled.	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.
NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.			

- If the selected CA is Microsoft Enterprise, a separate section **Vendor specific details** is displayed with a **Template Name** dropdown after the CA Accounts section.

When **Microsoft Standalone** is selected as CA. The following table provides the field description for Microsoft Standalone CA:

Details for Microsoft Standalone CA - Field an Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*CA Certificate	Dropdown	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority.	NA

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
		Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	
*CA Connector Name	Text	Name of the CA connector after certificate is being enrolled.	NA

NOTE: Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.

When **Nexus** is selected as CA,

The following table provides the field description for **Nexus CA**:

Details for Nexus CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*CA Account	Dropdown	Select a specific CA Account from the selected CA which is to be used for certificate creation operations.	NA
*CA Certificate	Select	Select the specific issuer certificate, that will be used for signing CSR by the certificate authority. Certs available in the root or intermediate cert inventory are displayed.	NA
*CA Connector Name	Select	Name of the CA connector after the certificate is enrolled.	NA
*Certificate Validity	Select	Validity of the certificate to be enrolled. (in days/months/years)	Certificate validity accepts only numerical values.

The following field is displayed in the **Vendor Specific Details** section as per the selected CA:

Details for Nexus CA - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description	Validation
*Procedure	Dropdown	Select the Procedure based on the configurations made in the Certificate Authority Setting.	NA

6. Configure the **Advanced Settings** details as follows:


The following table provides the field description for Advanced Settings:

Advanced Setting - Field and Description Table

Field Name	Field Type	Description
*Switch to Enroll	Radio button	Select Yes or No Selecting the radio button as Yes will convert the re-enrollment requests to enrollment requests
*Fetch Certificate Parameters	Radio button	Select Yes or No Setting the radio button to Yes, will enable the system to automatically fetch certificate parameters from a Suggestive Policy, and append them to the client CSRs.
*Include Truststore Certificates	Radio button	Select whether the issuer certificate needs to be sent to client machines after enrolment.
*High Speed Transactions	Radio button	Based on the selection of this field, the endpoint will be configured with or without High Performance transaction times. Request information pertaining to High-Performance can be viewed on the Direct Requests page.

Field Name	Field Type	Description
*Return Existing Certificate	Radio button	<p>If this option is enabled (Yes) then for request with AppViewX should check and return the existing valid certificate for the same CSR & public key from inventory if available otherwise it should proceed with enrollment and return the certificate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If it is set to Yes, the Certificate Threshold field is displayed. <p>If the option is disabled (No) then the AppViewX will do the default behavior of enrolling a new certificate for each request.</p>
Certificate Threshold	Text (numeric)	<p>This field is enabled only if Return Existing Certificate = Yes.</p> <p>Enter the number of days in this field. This value is used to Initiate a new certificate request if the certificate is nearing the expiry date i.e., if existing certificate validity is less than the entered value.</p>
*Retry Count	Text	<p>Values accepted between 5 - 99.</p> <p>Based on this value, the EST agent will trigger the number of calls to collect the certificate from AppViewX until it is received.</p>

Field Name	Field Type	Description
*Retry Frequency	Text	Values accepted between 10 - 99. The value specified in this field determines the duration taken between the trigger calls by the EST agent.

 **Note:** Fields with * (asterisk) are mandatory.

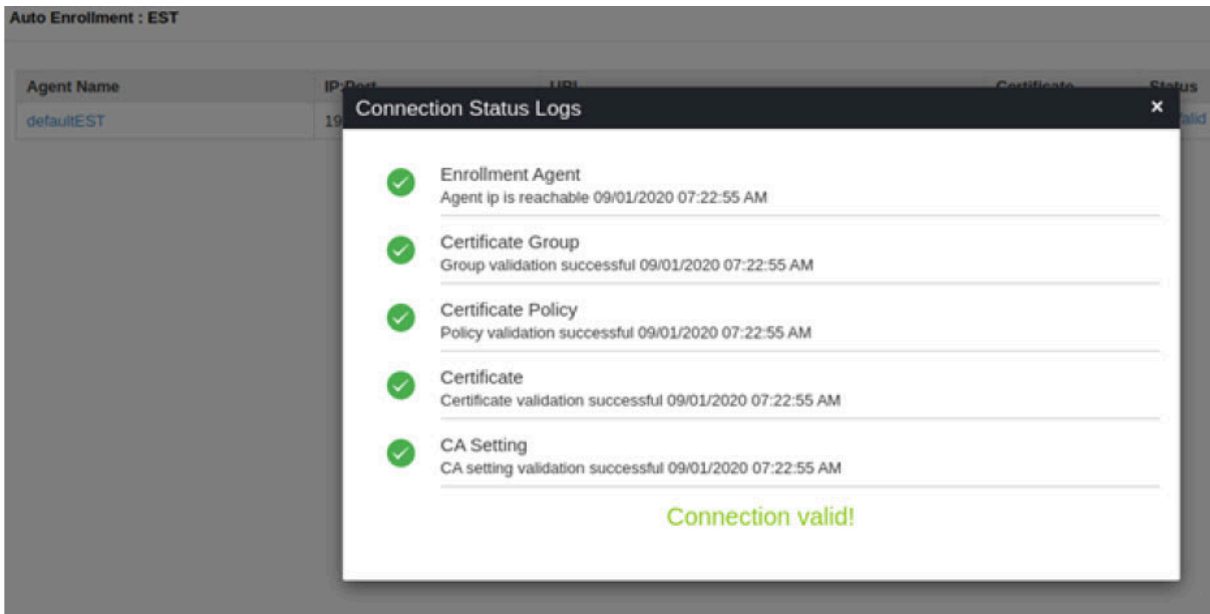
7. Click **Save**.

Validating EST

Once the EST settings are added validation needs to be done to check whether the CA and Agent-related details are properly configured.

1. Go to **Menu > KUBE+ > System Administration > Auto Enrollment > EST**.
2. On the **EST** page, click **Check** to validate the EST setting that has been created.

The EST settings will be validated and the **Status** will be shown as either **Success** or **Failure**.



The screenshot shows the 'Auto Enrollment : EST' page with a table of agents. A modal dialog titled 'Connection Status Logs' is open, displaying the following validation results:

- ✓ Enrollment Agent: Agent ip is reachable 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
- ✓ Certificate Group: Group validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
- ✓ Certificate Policy: Policy validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
- ✓ Certificate: Certificate validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM
- ✓ CA Setting: CA setting validation successful 09/01/2020 07:22:55 AM

At the bottom of the dialog, it states: **Connection valid!**

Uninstall and Cleanup

- [Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment](#)

Steps to Uninstall/Cleanup KUBE+ Deployment

The in-cluster components of KUBE+ deployed in the Kubernetes cluster must be completely uninstalled, if the administrator wishes to cease certificate lifecycle management for the designated cluster.

To achieve this, execute the following commands to uninstall the KUBE+ in-cluster component Cert-Orchestrator from your cluster.

- Uninstall the Cert-Orchestrator by executing the following Helm command:

```
helm uninstall crypto-mesh -n crypto-mesh.
```

- Uninstall the CSI provider if the Ephemeral Volume Feature gate has been installed by executing the following command:

```
helm uninstall csi -n crypto-mesh
```



Note: If the CSI provider is already present in the cluster and was not installed as a part of the cert-orchestrator deployment you can skip the uninstall of the CSI provider step.

- Remove the KUBE+ helm repositories from your cluster by executing the following commands:

```
helm repo remove crypto-mesh
```

```
helm repo remove csi
```



Note: You should proceed with the removal of the CSI provider from the repository only if it was enabled during the Cert-Orchestrator installation. If the CSI provider was already available, you can skip this step.

- Even after deleting the components of Cert-Orchestrator, Kubernetes secrets, configmaps, and other associated metadata may still remain in the cluster. You can remove this residual data by deleting the namespace where Cert-Orchestrator is installed.

```
kubectl delete ns crypto-mesh
```



Note: If a custom namespace was used during the installation of Cert-Orchestrator, please replace 'crypto-mesh' with your specified custom namespace.

- During the installation of Cert-Orchestrator, it deploys multiple Custom Resource Definitions (CRDs) within the Kubernetes cluster. To remove these CRDs manually, execute the following command:

```
kubectl get crd | grep appviewx | awk '{print $1}' | xargs kubectl delete crd
```

The steps outlined above completely remove the KUBE+ in-cluster components from the cluster. If the Cert-Orchestrator has been successfully uninstalled, the following commands will produce an empty output.

The commands are:

- `kubectl get namespace | grep crypto-mesh`



Note: If the namespace name is not 'crypto-mesh,' replace it with your custom namespace.

- `kubectl get crd | grep appviewx`
- `helm repo list`



Note: The command above should exclude both 'crypto-mesh' and the CSI repo.

- `kubectl get pods -n crypto-mesh`



Note: The command above should not display any running pods.

FAQ and Troubleshooting

- [Command Line Cheat Sheet](#)
- [FAQ](#)

Command Line Cheat Sheet

List of kubectl commands for configuring and troubleshooting issues pertaining to KUBE+ in-cluster components.

Command Line Cheat Sheet Table

S. No.	Command	Purpose
1	<code>kubectl get all --all-namespaces</code>	lists resources (pods, services, deployments, etc.) in all namespaces.
2	<code>kubectl get namespace <namespace_name></code>	Retrieves information about a specific namespace in a Kubernetes cluster.
3	<code>kubectl delete namespace <namespace_name></code>	Deletes a specific namespace and all the resources contained within it in a Kubernetes cluster.
4	<code>kubectl get pod</code>	List all the pods in the current Kubernetes namespace.
5	<code>kubectl get pods -n=[namespace_name]</code>	lists all the pods in a specific namespace in a Kubernetes cluster. Replace "[namespace_name]" with the actual name of the namespace you want to target. This command displays information about the pods in that namespace
6	<code>kubectl delete pod <pod_name></code>	Deletes a specific pod in a Kubernetes cluster.
7	<code>kubectl get secrets</code>	Lists all the secrets available in the current Kubernetes namespace.
8	<code>kubectl describe secret <secret_name></code>	Displays detailed information about a specific secret in a Kubernetes cluster.
9	<code>kubectl delete secret <secret_name></code>	Deletes a specific secret in a Kubernetes cluster.
10	<code>kubectl apply -f manifest_file.yaml</code>	Applies a configuration to an object by filename or stdin.
11	<code>kubectl logs -f <pod_name></code>	Prints the logs for a pod and it will continuously stream the logs as new

Command Line Cheat Sheet Table (continued)

S. No.	Command	Purpose
		log entries that are generated in real-time. This is useful for monitoring and troubleshooting applications running in Kubernetes pods..
12	<code>kubectl logs -c <container_name> <pod_name></code>	Prints the logs from a specific container within a pod in a Kubernetes cluster.
13	<code>kubectl logs <pod_name> pod.log</code>	Redirects and saves the logs from a specific pod in a Kubernetes cluster to a file named 'pod.log'.

FAQ**1. How to configure HA ?**

- You can configure HA by increasing the number of pods running, By default this is set to one.
- "certOrchestrator.replicaCount" field needs to be overridden in the deployment.
- Can use `--set` flag to override the same as below using helm
 - `--set certOrchestrator.replicaCount=2` (example to increase the number of pods to two)
- Always only one pod will be a leader, other pods will be non-leader, when the leader is down, an election will happen to elect the leader among the existing non-leader + new pod (created due to the kill of old leader), based on the election one of the pod will become Leader.

2. How to check if your pod is up and running ?How to configure monitoring for your pod running in a cluster?

You can monitor the pod livenessProbe under the below path from the cert-orchestrator pod

path: /healthz

port: 8081

3. How to add tolerations to the deployment pod?

Tolerations can be overridden using helm, PI refer the helm chart configuration.

4. What is the permission to be allowed in the cluster for running your pod?

- cert-orchestrator
 - configmaps
- create, get
 - namespaces
 - get, list
- nodes
 - get, list, watch
- pods
 - get, list
- secrets
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettingclusters
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettingclusters/status
 - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettings
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:casettings/status
 - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certreqs
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certreqs/status
 - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs/finalizers
 - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs/status
 - get, patch, update

- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests/finalizers
 - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests/status
 - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:renewaljobs
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:renewaljobs/status
 - get, patch, update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers
 - create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers/finalizers
 - update
- cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:signers/status
 - get, patch, update
- certificates.k8s.io:certificatesigningrequests
 - get, list, patch, update, watch
- certificates.k8s.io:certificatesigningrequests/status
 - get, patch, update
- certificates.k8s.io:[SIGNER_NAME]/istio:signers
 - sign
- coordination.k8s.io:leases
 - create, delete, get, list, update, watch
- events
 - create, patch
- networking.k8s.io:ingresses
 - get, list, watch
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses

- create, delete, get, list, patch, update, watch
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses/finalizers
 - update
- secrets-store.csi.x-k8s.io:secretproviderclasses/status
 - get, patch, update
- appviewx-infra-orchestrator
 - cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:discoveryrequests
 - create, get
- appviewx-csi-provider
 - serviceaccounts/token
 - create
 - secrets
 - create, get
 - cert-orchestrator.certplus.appviewx:certs
 - create, get

5. Whats is the permission given for SA (cluster role and cluster role binding)?

Refer to the answer provided for the previous question.

6. How to configure resource requirements?

Refer to the helm chart configuration under `certOrchestrator.resources`.

cert-orchestrator : Helm chart configuration parameters

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
<code>certOrchestrator</code>	<code>enabled</code>	Enable certOrchestrator.	true / false
	<code>renewalEnabled</code>	Enable renewal.	true / false
	<code>namespace</code>	Namespace for the cert-orchestrator installation.	Valid namespace name
<code>certOrchestrator.discovery</code>	<code>enabled</code>	Enable Discovery	true / false

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
	isGroupAutoGenerate	Allow auto group creation at AppViewX.	true / false
	credentialSecretName	Secret with credentials to be used for Discovery with AppViewX.	Valid Secret Name
	credentialSecretNamespace	Namespace for the above.	Valid namespace Name
certOrchestrator.global	logLevel	Log level for the cert-orchestrator terminal log.	0 to 7
	clusterName	Name of the cluster for the current installation.	Valid Cluster Name
	k8sVendor	Type of vendor where the cert-orchestrator runs.	Valid vendor Name
certOrchestrator.image	repository	Repository name for the image	Valid image name with repo
	tag	tag for the image	Valid image tag
	pullPolicy	Image Pull Policy	Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent
certOrchestrator.resources	limits.cpu	Describes the maximum amount of CPU allowed.	Default is 1000m, See Kubernetes - meaning of CPU
	limits.memory	Describes the maximum amount of Memory allowed.	Default is 1Gi. see Kubernetes - meaning of Memory
certOrchestrator.resources	requests.cpu	Describes the minimum amount of CPU required.	Default is 500m, see Kubernetes - meaning of CPU

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
	requests.memory	Describes the minimum amount of Memory required.	Default is 500Mi. See Kubernetes - meaning of Memory
certOrchestrator	tolerations	Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule.	

appviewx-csi-provider : Helm chart configuration parameters

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
appviewxCsiProvider	enabled	Enable appviewxCsiProvider.	true / false
appviewxCsiProvider.image	repository	Repository name for the image.	Valid image name with repo.
	tag	Tag for the image.	Valid image tag
	pullPolicy	Image Pull Policy	Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent
certOrchestrator	tolerations	Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule.	

appviewx-signer : Helm chart configuration parameters

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
appviewxSigner	enabled	Enable appviewxSigner.	true / false

appviewx-infra-orchestrator : Helm chart configuration parameters

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
appviewxInfraOrchestrator	enabled	Enable certOrchestrator.	true / false
	tick	Sync frequency for the certificate scan.	Valid time period string. Example : "60m"

Qualifier	Parameter	Definition	Allowed Values
appviewxInfraOrchestrator.image	repository	Repository name for the image.	Valid image name with repo
	tag	Tag for the image.	Valid image tag
	pullPolicy	Image Pull Policy	Always, Never or IfNotPresent. Defaults to IfNotPresent
appviewxInfraOrchestrator	tolerations	Describes the tolerations allowed for the pods to schedule.	

Chapter 2: KUBE+ Upgrade Guide

- [Introduction](#)
- [Steps for Cert-Orchestrator Migration from v1.2 to v1.3](#)

Introduction

When migrating the AppViewX Compute cluster, it is necessary to upgrade the Cloud Connector and Cert Orchestrator to enable the latest KUBE+ features.

Upgrade the Cloud Connector by selecting the upgrade option on the Cloud Connector page.

Due to changes in the API that Cert Orchestrator uses to communicate with AppViewX, Cert Orchestrator should also be upgraded after upgrading the compute cluster.

Steps for Cert-Orchestrator Migration from v1.2 to v1.3

Here are the steps for upgrading AppViewX KUBE+ to leverage the enhanced features introduced in the AppViewX 2023.1.0 FPs release:

1. Update the crypto-mesh helm repo by executing the command `helm repo update <REPO_NAME>`.
2. Get v1.3 helm chart by executing the command `helm pull <REPO_NAME>/crypto-mesh --version v1.3`.



Note: This command will download the helm chart for crypto-mesh v1.3 and save it as `crypto-mesh-v1.3.tgz` in the current folder.

3. Extract the contents of the `crypto-mesh-v1.3.tgz` file by executing the command `tar -xvf crypto-mesh-v1.3.tgz`.



Note: This command will extract the contents of the tarball (tgz file) and create a folder named 'crypto-mesh' with the extracted files in the current directory.

4. Apply CRDs of v1.3 from the above folder by executing the command `kubectl apply -f ./crypto-mesh/crds/cert-orchestrator/`
5. Upgrade cert-orchestrator from v1.2 to v1.3 using "helm upgrade" by executing the following command:

```
helm upgrade <HELM_NAME> <REPO_NAME>/crypto-mesh --version v1.3 --namespace
```

```

<NAMESPACE> --set
  certOrchestrator.discovery.credentialSecretName=appviewx-auth --set
  certOrchestrator.discovery.credentialSecretNamespace=<NAMESPACE> --set
  certOrchestrator.discovery.isGroupAutoGenerate=<true/false> --set
  certOrchestrator.global.clusterName=<CLUSTER_NAME> --set
  certOrchestrator.global.k8sVendor=<VENDOR>

```

Make sure to replace the placeholders with the actual values:

- a. <HELM_NAME>: Existing Helm name for cert-orchestrator. To get the existing helm name, execute the command `helm ls -A | grep crypto-mesh-v1.2`.
- b. <REPO_NAME>: Name of the Helm repository.
- c. <NAMESPACE>: Namespace where cert-orchestrator is installed. To get the existing namespace, execute the command `helm ls -A | grep crypto-mesh-v1.2`.

- d. <CLUSTER_NAME>: Existing cluster name. To get the existing cluster name, execute the command `kubectl get deployment cert-orchestrator -n <NAMESPACE> -o yaml | grep cluster-name`
- e. <VENDOR>: Vendor type (Self-Managed/EKS/AKS/GKE/OpenShift).